THE *NEW ATLAS:* OR, Travels *and* Voyages IN *Europe, Asia, Africa* and *America,* Thro' the most Renowned Parts of the WORLD, *VIZ.*

From *England* to the *Dardanelles*, thence to *Constantinople*, *Ægypt*, *Palestine*, or the Holy Land, *Syria*, *Mesopotamia*, *Chaldea*, *Persia*, *East-India*, *China*, *Tartary*, *Muscovy*, and by *Poland*; the *German Empire*, *Flanders* and *Holland*, to *Spain* and the *West-Indies*; with a brief Account of *Æthiopia*, and the Pilgrimages to *Meeba* and *Medina* in *Arabia*, containing what is Rare and Worthy of Remarks in those vast Countries; relating to Building, Antiquities, Religion, Manners, Customs, Princes, Courts, or Affairs Military and Civil, or whatever else of any kind is worthy of Note.

Performed by an *English* Gentleman, in Nine Years Travel and Voyages, more exact than Ever.

LONDON, Printed for *J. Cleave* in *Chancery-Lane* near *Serjeant's Inn*, and *A. Roper* at the *Black Boy* in *Fleet-street*, 1698.

TO THE

Ingenious Reader,

THE

PREFACE.

THE *desire of Travel, and Voyaging to distant Lands, is so Natural to an Active Genious, that but few who have not had the opportunity of putting it in Action, have been no less desirable of such an improving undertaking. By what is visible in one's Native Country, there is no exalted Mind but must consequently tend to a higher elevation in Knowledge, to furnish it with a Completion of those wonderful things the scanty Globe Communicates to the Sight and Senses, so to enable one to give a true Judgment in difference of Countries, and*

what is Rare and Remarkable in them. To this end, Princes have laid aside their Regal Ornaments, and the exuberant Pleasures of Thrones for a time, taking on them the Fateigue of long Journeys, through many dangers and difficulties, that so they might inform themselves of the certainty of things, and Affairs worthy to be entertained in the repositories of Royal Breasts, and to be the concern of Majesty. I need not enumerate Ancient Examples for this, one very Modern may suffice, to evidence Truth of what I Attest. It is well known how the Great and Powerful Czar of Muscovy, *in the midst of War shrouding Majesty in a mean disguise; left his Spacious Country and Armies Contesting with the mighty Nations of* Turks *and* Tartars, *making a tedious Journey to inform himself in those Matters; of which, at Home, he conceived he had but an imperfect Relation; also to polliſh his pregnant Genious in the refined Courts of other Princes, and in all probability*

met

met with a ſatisfaction that made him conclude his Time and Travel well beſtowed and undertaken.

I need not much enforce an Argument to perſwade the Ingenious that Travel, renders a Man very much accompliſhed, and often raiſes his Fortune above the common level. It has been ſeen in Ancient and Modern Ages, whilſt ſuch as have ſupinely loytered away their Moments of Life, under the umbrage of their own Manſion, have made no figure in the World, whilſt they remained in it; and when they dropt from the ſtage of Mortality were ſoon wrapped in Oblivion. But to come ſomewhat nearer to my purpoſe;

In this Hiſtory of my Travels through many vaſt Countries, I have been very exact to ſet down nothing but what with much Care and Circumſpection occurred to me; where any thing is mentioned, as by Hear-ſay, which is but ſcanty. I

had

had it in Conversing with those knowing, and, as I nearly conclude, of much Integrity, every thing bearing a probability and consonance to Truth. The whole Work is free from Impossibilities, or any thing that may carry the face of Romantick Stories or Fables, you may easily perceive in Reading, where I was an occular and aureal Witness, and where I had only informations from others, which contribute but a very little part of what I have Written. I have as much as possible affected Brevity, and must presume to say, that none who have gone before me, have in Large Volumes comprized so much material matter. I Writ it indeed at first for the refreshing my own memory, but my Friends, who on all occasions had been Dear to me, were impatient that it should rest in Silence, and swayed me even against my inclinations, to let it go abroad; (for not without some Reluctancy) I submitted to their importunities, and the many reasons they urged to Frame or Mould me to a temper of complying.

plying. And now it is abroad, I am altogether perſwaded, it cannot but be grateſull to my ingenious Conntrymen, nay, even to Neighbouring Nations; for ſomething conſtrains me to imagin, it will not altogether be confined within the narrow compaſs of a ſingle Iſland, when it contains in it ſelf ſo great a ſhare of the World, and all that is worthy of Note in the Countries it mentions, and thoſe the moſt Famed in the Univerſe. I have digeſted it into a Method ſuitable for the underſtanding of all intelligent Capacities, and formed it in Chapters, that any thing deſired may be the ſooner found out, or turn'd to; yet the Contents mention not the Particulars at full, but only ſome as an Introduction to the reſt; for the matter being Conciſe and Compact, ſhould I bring every thing under the heads mentioned therein, they would ſwell too much, and perhaps be tedious to the Reader, ſeeing ſuch a method is a kind of doubling what is the ſubſequent, and an Anticipateing the the Readers Expectation.

To

To Conclude, I present you with Truth and Variety, and so resting on the ingenious Reader's good Nature, and Impartiality for a candid Construction of this Work, I take leave to subscribe my self,

Your Most Humble,

and Devoted Friend

to serve you,

T. C.

The

THE *NEW ATLAS*; OR, Travels *and* Voyages In *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*.

CHAP. I.

Motives that induced the Author to undertake these Travels; his first setting out for Constantinople, *and Voyage as far as the* Dardanelles; *the description of divers places he touched at in the way, and what else happened in that passage.*

INSPIRED by the Fame of distant Lands, by seeing what's rare and Worthy of Note nearer Home, I debated with my self whether the latter ought not to suffice my curiosity, and laboured very much to enforce it for many Reasons; but neither that, nor the Charge, Danger, and Hardships I was like to meet with in Voyaging tempestuous Seas, nor Travelling strange

Countries, had any ſuch prevalent Effect upon me as to ſurmount the eager Inclination and reſtleſs Deſire I had to be an Eye-witneſs of thoſe things I had often heard, though imperfectly, in Relation to what they have ſince appear'd. This great Reſolve labouring in my Mind, my Friends could not chuſe but take notice of ſome great alteration in me, and their preſſing deſires to know the cauſe of unuſual Emotions that were too evident, conſtrain'd me to open my ſelf freely, which at firſt did not a little ſtartle them; but perceiving I was fully bent on the undertaking, and that all their perſwaſions to the contrary were fruitleſs, they aſſiſted me with a ſupply in a great meaſure to carry on my undertaking; and ſo having prepared every thing I then thought neceſſary, we parted with good Wiſhes, Prayers and Tears.

I ſent my Cargo on Board a Merchant's Ship lying over-againſt *Eriffe*, in the River of *Thames*, on the 30th of *April* 1684, and travelling over-land, went on Board my ſelf when ſhe was fallen to the *Downs*. It will be needleſs to tell you what Agreement I made with the Maſter who was my Friend, and uſed me extream well during my Voyage, or how I ſpent my time e'er we quitted the Lands end; let it ſuffice we were driven back by ſtreſs of Weather, and forced to put in at ſeveral places with other Ships in our Company, before we had a fair Wind to carry us out to Sea; but at length Providence ſo ordered it, that the Wind came about as well as we could wiſh, and we loſt no time to embrace ſo favourable an opportunity; but getting out of Harbour, where we had lain for Ten days Wind bound, in a few hours ſailing *England* diſappeared, but Night coming on, the Sun ſetting with a dusky Cloud a thwart it, and darting its Beams Pale to either Pole, the Mariners obſerved by that and ſome other Signs they have, that a Storm threatned us; nor were they deceived in their Conjecture, for the Wind aroſe by degrees, and about Midnight it was a full Storm, but with ſome difficulty

we

we weather'd it, for about the riſing of the Sun the Wind ſlackned and we kept on our way; yet this toſsing a little indiſpoſed me, ſo that all that day I kept my Cabin, but for the moſt part after this the Seas and Winds contended as it were to give us a favourable paſſage to *Conſtantinople*, whither this Ship was bound upon ſome particular occaſions as well as that of Trade, which I do not conceive pertinent to this Relation of my own Travels, nor ſhall I deſcribe, as ſome ſuperfluouſly do, all the Coaſts we made in our Sailing: Let it ſuffice then that we touched not till we came to *Meſſina* in *Sicily*, though in our paſſage I ſaw the Fires of the Mountain *Stromboli*, which in the night time looked dreadful, though at a great diſtance, and was informed that the People who live near it conceive a fooliſh opinion, that it is an entrance into Hell, becauſe when the Fire makes its Irruptions they hear howlings as of the Damned, which is no more than the Winds breaking through the hollow Rockey Caverns in the Mountain, waſted by the long continuance of the burning, which makes a confuſed noiſe, that at a diſtance reſembles howling.

Paſſing the Fare of *Meſſina*, we came before the Town, and dropt Anchor without the Port, where thoſe that would had leave to go a-ſhore; I failed not to do it, and whilſt the Sailers were employed in taking in ſome neceſſaries, I took a ſlight view of the place. It lies on that ſide the Iſland that looks to *Rhegio* in *Italy*, from which it is 60 miles diſtant, where the Ancient Town of *Zande* ſtood: Nature has furniſhed it with a pleaſant and ſafe Harbour, which for its compactneſs may be thought to have been made by Art. The Buildings that adorn the Port are Regular and Uniform, ſo that they give a pleaſant proſpect at the end of the Mole that ſhuts in the Port: There is a Tower well fortified to ſecure the entry, and about the middle of it is another Tower, on the top of it a a great Light to guide Ships in the Night; The Streets of the Town are fair and large; The Cathe-

dral is very ſtately, and over the Door in large Characters is Written, *Gran-Mercy a Meſſine.* When the *French* became Maſters of the Iſland, it was the firſt place that Surrendered, and *Sicily* cauſed and beheld the fatal Tragedy of the Intruders, for a deſign was ſecretly laid and carried on, ſo that on a ſet day, when the Bell rung to Evening Song, which was the Sign, the Inhabitants of the Iſland Maſſacred all the French Nation without ſparing Women or Children, which is ſtill called the Fatal *Sicilian* Veſper. Before the Church is a ſquare Piazza, with a Theatre in the middle, where the Victory over the Turkiſh Naval Forces is repreſented in Braſs, and in the ſame Metal ſtands the Statue of Don *John* of *Auſtria*, the Spaniſh Admiral, in that Expedition. The Country is very Fruitful, abounds in Sulphur Mines, and much ſubject to Earthquakes. The next Town of note is *Syracuſe*, where the famous *Archimedes* made his Experiments, and fired the *Roman* Navy that beſieged it with Burning-Glaſſes. There is a Caſtle built on the Rocks called *Scyla*, and the Water beating on theſe Rocks reſembles the barking of Dogs. As for *Charibdis* it is oppoſite to the Port of *Meſſina*, and not dangerous, but when two contrary Eddies meet and make a kind of a whirlpool, ſo that ſometimes Ships turn round and are ſucked in, which gave occaſion to Fable them two Sea Monſters ſet there to deſtroy Paſſengers, though there are Pilots always ready at the general Charge to guide Ships in and out. The Viceroy has his Reſidence here ſix Months, and as many at *Palermo*. *Mount Gibello*, anciently called *Ætna*, much infects this fruitful Iſland with its firey Irruptions. The Sicilians are very hauty, Proud, and exceeding Jealous of the Spaniards under whoſe Government they are.

From hence ſetting Sail, we directed our Courſe to *Maltha*, and having Coaſted *Sicily*, there ſprung up an Eaſt North Eaſt Wind, before which we drove a very ſwift Sailing, and ſoon made the Iſle of *Maltha*, in the Port of which we came to an Anchor.

It

It lies in the *African* Sea, between *Sicily* and *Tripoly*, in the Latitude of 38 degrees, and in Longitude 34, extending from East to West 29 Miles, and is about 12 over; all the Earth is exceeding White; its Ancient Name was *Melita*. In the Year 1530 the Emperor *Charles* gave it, and the Isle of *Gozo*, to the Knights who were driven out of *Rhodes*, and they have ever since possessed it in spite of all the efforts the Turks have made. It seems to be a Rock with very little Earth on it, yet it bears Fruit and Corn, but they are mostly supplied from *Sicily*, it lying but 20 Leagues distant. Here St. Paul on his landing in his passage to *Rome* shook off the Viper; they show his Grott, and the Earth is dug there, and carried away for many Physical uses. The Natives wear Green Spectacles to prevent their Eyes from Dazling, by reason of the whiteness of the Earth. The Knights of the Order are under a great Master. They have many advantageous Ports well defended, and are formidable at Sea with their Galleys to the Moors of Barbary and Turks; for if they take them they make 'em Slaves. The Towns of *Maltha* are well scituate and defended; they have good Magazines, and always keep a good Provision of Arms and Naval Stores. They are very charitable to Travellers, especially the Sick, providing for them in their Hospitals while they stay, and pay the charges of their Voyage when they depart.

The Wind being again fair, we left *Maltha*, passing the Cape of *Metapan* and Isle of *Cerigo*, the Ancient Porphyrus and Citherea, where formerly stood a Magnificent Temple to *Venus*, the ruins of which, as I was told, are still to be seen near the Sea; and meeting with a storm, we were constrained to cast Anchor before the Island of *Zia*, which in Ancient times was called *Calle Ceos* or *Cea*; it is about 50 Miles in Circuit, shaped like a Horse-shoe; the Soil produces Wine, Corn, good Pasture, and many other useful things; the Harbour is stored with Fish, the Inhabitants are very civil to Strangers,

gers; the Women wear their Coats but to their Knees, and their Smocks about a Foot below that, with a Veil reaching their Breasts, which they turn aside as they think fit; when they will or will not Compliment any but lying in War's way, between the Turks and Venetians, they are much oppressed and impoverished, otherways the plenty of the Island would inrich them.

Sailing from hence we made the Isle of *Andra*: This is the Ancient *Andros* of the Greeks, but now Inhabited by People of several Nations, as *Albanians*, *Armenians*, *Turks*, *Jews*, *&c.* and these differ in Customs as well as Languages, very rude and unhospitable: the Chief Towns are *Arni* and *Amolacos*. The Greeks have several Churches in this Island, but the People are very Superstitious and odd in their Devotions, strowing Flowers, and rowling in them; but the Latins who have likewise Churches there, are more Civilized, and proceed Regular: The Island is very Fruitful, and here they make abundance of white wicker Baskets used all over the *Archipelago*.

Weighing Anchor, we got out to Sea, and stood to the Starboard, passing between this Island and *Negropont*, and having a South-west Wind, *Sciro*, and soon after *Ispi Cera*, and some other places appeared. In the Evening when we were pretty clear of Islands, the Wind turned East South East, and we soon made the Land where *Troy* stood, little of whose Ruins remain; for we had passed *Tenedos* in the Night, so passing the Mouths we entered the Channel of the *Helespont*, the place where the Turks passed from *Asia*, into *Europe* to extend their Empire.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Heleſpont, Dardanelles, *Places about them, what is obſervable in* Conſtantinople *and its adjacents; Containing all that is Curious and Remarkable in theſe Parts.*

THE Gate, or Entrance, as it were, to *Conſtantinople* being by the *Heleſpont* and *Dardanelles*, I think it here convenient to ſay ſomething of this fam'd Streight before I come a Land; It lies in 37 Degrees, 42 Minutes, North Latitude, and of Longitude about 55, not extending above 10 or 12 Leagues in length, and at the entrance it is a large League and an half broad; it divides the Country of *Thrace* from *Troas* a Province of *Aſia*, that lies to the Eaſt: To the North lies the *Propontis*, and to the South the *Ægean* Sea, and the *Archipelago*; and in Sailing here one has a proſpect of divers fine Towns, Villages, *&c.* and a curious Country on either Hand.

The Turks knowing the important advantage of this Streight, have Fortified the Paſſage with two ſtrong Caſtles, one in *Europe*, and the other in *Aſia*; the Caſtle built in *Aſia*, called the *New Caſtle*, is ſeated on a tongue of Land pointing out into the Sea on a ſquare Platform, comprizing 4 large panes of Walls, flanked at the four Corners with Towers; thoſe next the Sea, ſquare with a ſort of Redoubt only on one ſide; thoſe toward the Land are round, and defend the Walls, but neither in thickneſs nor largeneſs comparable to the other; the Works waſhed by the Sea have Port-holes level with the ſurface of the Water, and I could number as I Sailed by,

about 40 Cannon mounted, to prevent any Ships from forcing their way into the Harbour; and to the South of this Caſtle ſtands a very fair Moſque.

The Caſtle on the European ſide, which the Turks call *Roumeli-inglu-iſſar*, is ſeated near to Cape *Greco*, and in form is irregular; within the compaſs of the Walls are Houſes for the Aga, and other Officers, with a fair Moſque. There is a Platform on which many great Guns are planted, lying equal with the ſurface of the Water. Near the Caſtle lies a ſmall Village noted for its Five ſtately Pilaſters, that ſerve to underprop the Aquaducts bringing Water to the Fortreſs. But notwithſtand- theſe Caſtles, whoſe Guns reach from Shore to Shore, the Venetians, and other Maritime Nations, have inſulted the Harbour, for the Caſtles lie not directly oppoſite, leaſt in firing they ſhould batter each other. The Caſtles are appointed to examine Ships that paſs and re-paſs, and the Governors have Orders to ſink ſuch Ships as will not comply: Beyond theſe Caſtles that are of Modern building are two old Caſtles, one on each ſhore; that on the Aſian ſide the Turks call *Natoli-jski-iſſiar*; it is of ſquare Building, flanked at the corners with Towers, and in the midſt of it is a large ſquare Tower, on which ſome Culverin is placed; and behind this Caſtle is a large Village of about 3000 Inhabitants, Chriſtians, Turks, and Jews; Theſe by us are called the Caſtles of the *Dardanelles*. That on the European ſide is of a Regular Fortification, and indeed we may eſteem this narrow Paſſage well guarded by theſe Caſtles, and *Conſtantinople* ſo advantageouſly Scituated, that no great City in the World can boaſt of more Advantages; as will by and by appear.

Being examined at the Caſtles, and leave obtained to paſs, we arrived at *Gallipoly*, about 35 Miles from them. This Town was anciently built by one *Callias*, Prince of the *Athenians*, and after his Name called *Callipolis*, but now corruptly *Gallipoly*; it is thinly inhabited by Greeks, who moſtly ſell a

Liquor

Liquor called *Raki*, a kind of Brandy, and some Oyl. The Doors of their Houses are not above two Foot high, and so made to prevent the proud Turks Insults, who are hereby prevented riding in on Horseback. In this Town there is a square Castle, with a Tower joyned to it by the Pummel of a Wall; to the Seaward there is an Arsenal, where the old Galleys are laid up which the Turks affirm to have been taken from the Venetians when they took the Island of *Cyprus*; but in Truth they are a part of their own shatter'd Fleet that escaped from the Battle of *Lepanto*, and were by main strength carried over the Isthmus of *Corinth*, and put into the *Archipelago*, they not being able to bring them about by Sea, because the Christians had possessed all the Passes.

After having been a-shore, and pretty well refreshed in this place, we weighed Anchor, and with a West South West Wind passed the Isle of *Marmora*: At this place the Sea is wide, and this is properly the *Propontis*, though now called mostly *Mare de Marmora*; and here though we had a fair Wind, the Current setting strong against us, we could not make much way; however, Sailing on we in a little time came in sight of *Constantinople*, which is about 125 Miles from *Gallipoly*, and entering into the Streight of it we had a very fine Prospect of that Famous City; it is seated in *Thrace*, on *Europe* side, over-against the Scituation of Ancient *Chalcedon* on the Asian Shore.

Constantinople, by most that have seen it, is held to be the best Scituated of any City in the World for all manner of conveniency, *viz.* On a point of main Land, jutting out towards the *Thracian Bosphorus*, so little divided from *Asia*, that it requires but half an hours Sailing to pass thither; on the Right Hand is has the *Propontis*, or *White-Sea*; on the Left the *Euxine* or *Black-Sea* and *Paulus Mæotis*, which receiving a great number of Rivers, and having on it many bordering People, this City is plentifully furnished with all necessaries; for let the Wind

blow

blow as it will, the Channels of the White and Black Sea ſerve it, becauſe, when it is contrary to the one it ſtands fair for the other.

Between theſe Seas is the entry of the Port, which Nature without the help of Art has made exceeding uſeful, for it is always ſo replenniſhed with Water, that Ships of good burthen may lay their heads on the Keys, and one may ſtep a-ſhore without any difficulty.

It is held to be firſt Founded by *Pauſanias*, King of *Sparto*, who named it *Byzantium*; and upon his conſulting the Oracle where to build a City, he gave no other Anſwer but this, *viz.* Over-againſt the blind Men, intimating the *Calcidonians*, who had neglected the fair opportunity of a ſight ſo accommodated by Nature, and buiſt *Chalcedon* in *Aſia* oppoſite to it. It was deſtroyed by *Severus*, to puniſh the Citizens for their Revolt, but reſtored more Magnificent by *Conſtantine* the Great, who named it *Conſtantinople*, equalling it with *Rome* in her Ancient Glory, and removing the Seat of the Empire thither, as if it were deſigned by the Nature of its Scituation, to bear Rule, and be the Miſtriſs of Cities. There goes a Fame, that when *Conſtantine* was about to meaſure out ground to build an Imperial City in *Aſia*, a ſtooping Eagle catched up the Line, and carrying it over the Streight, dropt it in the place where the City now ſtands, which was looked on as a fortunate Preſage, and prov'd a ſufficient encouragement for erecting it. It was once taken by the *Latins* from the *Greeks*, *Anno* 1203, and re-taken by them *Anno* 1254; and laſtly by *Mahomet* the Second Emperour of the Turks, *Anno* 1453, who ſince made it the Seat of the Empire, and called it *Iſtambol*, corruptly from the Greek Word Σταμπόλιν. The heat of the Air in Summer is cool, and much allayed by the Breezes that come from the Seas. It has been much ſubject to Earthquakes, and is very often ſo to the Plague.

Conſtan-

Conſtantinople is in Figure Triangular, two ſides of it are waſhed by the Sea, the one by the Propontis, or White Sea, and the other by the Port; the other ſide is towards the Land; the biggeſt of the three is that beaten by the Surges of the Propontis, reaching from the Seraglio to the ſeven Towers, and that towards the Port is the middlemoſt: The Seraglio being built on the point of the point of the Triangle, gives a curious Proſpect, for it runs out between the Propontis and the Port: Its Gardens on the Shoar are very Charming, there being nothing that is ſcarce and rare but is found in them; and this is held to be the particular ſpot where the Ancient *Byzantium* ſtood. On the other Angle pointing to the Canal of the White Sea, are the ſeven Towers; they were built by the Chriſtians, and are covered with Lead; the chief uſe they are now put to, is to keep the vaſt Treaſure of the Empire, ſent as Tribute from many Nations, though part of them are often made a Priſon for Perſons of Quality, and great Officers. At the third Angle which is at the bottom of the Port to the Land ſide, appear the Ruins of *Conſtantine*'s Pallace, by which it ſeems to have been very Magnificent.

This great City is encompaſſed by ſtrong Walls, and to the Land ſide they are double; in ſome places the Walls are of rough Stone and Brick, in others of Smooth Freeſtoone; they are guarded by a good Ditch, Wharfed and Faced on both ſides; the Walls are guarded by a great number of little Towers at an equal diſtance, and Guns planted commodiouſly, though I confeſs, I take it not to be very ſtrong, compared with the Modern Fortified Towns and Cities: Some allow it to be 16 Miles in circuit, but I cannot well agree with them, for I, with another Perſon, walked and rowed it at a pretty moderate pace in three Hours, ſo that I gueſs it to be about 12 Miles in Circuit. It has 22 Gates, 6 towards the Land, 5 towards the Propontis, and 11 along the Port; thoſe to the Water anſwered

anſwered by Creeks, Landing places and Stairs. When I had made this obſervation I thought it convenient to enter the City, which I did on the fifth of *June* about nine in the Morning, I found the Streets moſtly narrow, the Houſes generally built of Timber, and that is the reaſon when Fires happen, which they often do, vaſt numbers of Houſes are conſumed before the raging Element can be overcome, and the Janiſaries and others, appointed to extinguiſh it, many times on a diſguſt, or for the ſake of Plunder, encourage the progreſs of the Conflagration by hindering thoſe that would aſſiſt them.

Going to the Beſeſtn which is a diſtinct Canton of the City, encloſed with Gates and Walls, I found it to be very fine, for here the Merchants keep Shop, and the place is very Regular, the Houſes are covered above with Planks joyned upon Rafters, though there are holes left to let in the Light; and here the richeſt Wares are vended, or at leaſt Samples to be ſeen of ſuch as they have in their Warehouſes; They are all ranked by themſelves, ſo that buſineſs is quickly diſpatched. At ten every Evening the Gates are ſhut, and after that hour none can paſs without giving a ſmall matter of Money to the Porter, and this is the place moſt frequented; greateſt part of the Streets though the City are very Populous, being eaſie to paſs without Crouds at any time.

From this place I went to viſit the Hypyodrome, which ſpacious place was built by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, for Tilts, Tournaments, and other exerciſe on Horſeback, and the Turks at preſent call it the place of Horſes; It is 400 paces long, and about 200 broad; and at the end oppoſite to the Seraglio, there are two Obilisks, the firſt is 70 Foot high, and can be diſcerned to conſiſt of no more than one Stone; it is adorned with ſeveral Herogliphical Figures in Relief, placed on a ſquare Marble Pedeſtal; on one of the Faces of the Pedeſtal is an old Latin Inſcription ſo defaced by time,

time, that no more can be gathered from it, than that it was built by the Emperor *Theodoſius*; the Second has a like in Greek Characters; the Third is adorned with the Emperor's Effigies ſeated on a Throne, with his Officers of State about him; and on the Fourth is repreſented a Battle. The other Obelisk is of Free Stone, ſharp pointed like a Piramid, and being much worn by time, has no Inſcription on it to be diſcerned.

Near theſe ſtands a Brazen Piller of conſiderable heighth, commonly called the Serpentine Column, becauſe it appears like three Serpents wreathed or twiſted together, their Tails faſtned to the ground, and at the top it has 3 gapeing Mouths; and it is the common opinion, that this Pillar was ſet up in remembrance of 3 Serpents, who in Ancient times waſted the confines of the City, till the Emperor *Leo Haurus* by Magick Art drew them into a great Ditch in the middle of the Hypyodrome, who were killed by filling up the Ditch with Stones and Earth. In this City there are two other Columns, one called the Hiſtorical, and the other the Burnt Column, the latter being defaced by Fire, but neither of them being much remarkable, I paſs them over, yet adjoyning to them there is a Court where the Archers Exerciſe, and the Turks are very exact in ſhooting, for I ſee them ſtick their Arrows one after another in the circumference of half a Crown, at 100 Paces.

The next thing of Note my curioſity led me to viſit was, *Sancta Sophia*, the principal Moſque in the City; it has ſeveral Doors that lead into a Portico that gives entrance into the Moſque, which is 120 Paces in Length, and 80 in breadth, having ſquare Walls, but the Vault or Roof is round, ſo Artificially contrived, that the Frame is ſupported without Columns, though there are many rows of Columns, which only appear to ſupport the weight of two Galleries, yet are placed ſo that they prove very Ornamental, being 30 on each ſide, about 16 Foot high, of hard polliſhed Stone; however, the

length

length of Time has made many Clefts and Chinks in them. The Vault of the Moſque retains much of its Ancient Beauty, as being adorned with curious Moſaick Work, conſiſting of ſmall guilt Stones ſo neatly joyned, that they after ſo many Ages remain almoſt perfect; and at the four Corners where the Vault begins, in Moſaick Work, are the Figires of the four Beaſts mentioned in the Apocalyps, yet Turks who pretend to abhor Images have ſomewhat defaced them, as they have the Figure of our Saviour, which is over the Principal Door: He is repreſented ſitting on a Throne, giving Benediction to one that proſtrates before him; the Figure of the Virgin *Mary* appears on the Right Hand; and in a Baſs-Relief the Holy Ghoſt is repreſented in the Figure of a Dove, which they have not at all defaced.

There is to be ſeen the Tomb of the Renowned Emperor *Conſtantine* in this ſtately Structure, in former times a Chriſtian Church; it is a Grey Stone, 8 Foot long, and 4 over, and the Turks hold it in remembrance of that worthy Emperor of great Eſteem. This Moſque or Temple is paved with curious Marble covered with Mats, to abate the coldneſs of the Stone when they proſtrate themſelves, for the Turks are ſo devoutly ſuperſtitious, that they put of their Barbouches, or Shooes, when they enter their Moſques. There are alſo to be ſeen the ruins of other fine Paintings and Images, partly defaced by the Turks, and partly by Time.

Chriſtians are not admitted here without Connivance or Bribery, and thoſe only by the *Franks*; for if a Jew or Greek be found in the Moſque, he muſt either die, or turn Turk. It was built by *Juſtinian* the Emperor on recovery of his health, having vowed in his Sickneſs, if God ſpared him, to found one of the beautifuleſt Churches in the World, to the honour of the Soveraign Wiſdom, for *Sophia* in the Greek ſignifies Wiſdom, and this is the only Ancient Structure of this kind in *Conſtantinople*; for though there are many ſtately Moſques,

Mosques in the City, they are of late building, Erected by the Sultans and Sultanesses, whose Names they bear; as that of *Solyman* the Magnificent, which is very Stately; of *Achmet Mohomet Selim*; with those of *Chadazet* and *Valide*, new and very Beautiful, by the Idea of which last you may guess at the rest; it was Founded by the Sultaness *Valide*, Mother to *Mahomet* the Fourth, seated in the middle of a large square Court, resembling a vast Cloister, by reason of the Arched Roof that environs it like a Portico, and under are divers Fountains with Cocks, where those that are polluted wash themselves e'er they enter the Mosque; it has but one Gate, and that is surrounded by a Portico of extraordinary heighth, paved with white and black Marble, supported by 64 Pillars of Red Marble; the Platform is adorned with Painting and Figures after the Turkish manner. This Portico is covered with many little Domes, and a very large one in the middle higher than the rest, the whole Structure being very curious Work covered with Lead; there are four Turrets at the four Corners of the Buidling, called Minarets, slender, but very high, with Balconies round them, standing like Maypoles, with Cressents on the Globes, and winding-Stairs, just enough for the Muesans to creep up with their loud Bawlings to call the People to Prayers, for they have no Bells, where clapping their hands on their Ears, they go round the Turret in the Balconies, and when they cry their Voices are heard very far. They call in their own Language, which in English is to this Effect; *God is a great God, give Testimony that there is but one God, come yield your selves up to his Mercy, and Pray him to forgive you your Sins. God is a great God*, &c. This Mosque is Vaulted and Adorned with a great number of Lamps and Globes of Glass, and in the Globes are many curious Devices, as Galleys, the model of Mosques, Trees, Flowers, Cities, and the like. There is a Table at the upper end, where usually the High Altar stands in the Romish Churches, and

to

to this they turn their Faces when they ſay their Prayers, over which is placed the Name of God, Written in Gold Arabick Characters, and over-againſt that are fixed two Brazen Candleſticks holding Wax Tapers of a vaſt bigneſs. The Sultans or Emperors lie Buried in their Moſques, their Tombs being covered with Rich Carpets, which have been laid on *Mahomet*'s Tomb at *Mecha*; for they conclude that ſanctifies them, and keeps them from evil Spirits; their rich Turbans are placed at the Head, and if they have been Warlike, their Cimiters, and other Military Atchievements, are fixed on or near them: Divers Alcorans are chained to the Tombs, and there is always one or other that has a Penſion left them by the deceaſed Emperor to Read the Alcoran to the People that come to viſit the Tomb, and to Pray for his Soul. Sultan *Amurat* has two of his Wives placed at his Head, and eleven of his Children round him; and at the head of the Tomb or Coffin is a convenient place where his Prayer-Books are laid up, appearing through a Latten Grate, adorned with Gold and precious Stones. The Keepers of the Turbe, or little Chaple, in the Moſque where theſe Bodies lie, are obliged at certain hours of the day to Pray for the Souls of the deceaſed.

The Arſenal is at the end of the Port belonging to the City, being a very compact Building; it contains a conſiderable extent of Ground; the Galleys are laid up there under 120 Arches; the Chriſtians are not permitted to come into it, but the Turks ſay, there are Arms for 60000 Men, beſides Furniture for Shipping, and in the Baths many thouſand Slaves are ſhut up who lead miſerable Lives. The Captain Baſſa, and all the Officers depending on the Admiralty, have their Apartments, and lodg in the Arſenal, that they may be ever ready to receive Orders about the Naval concerns.

In this City are many Hans and Kervanſerais, which ſerve moſt for Warehouſes, being ſtrongly built, barred and guarded to prevent Imbezlement.

The

The Hans consist of four sides of building, enclosing a square Court with a Fountain, the Roof consists of little Domes covered with Lead; and here Foreign Merchants, who bring their Goods to lay up, find entertainment; they only contain two Stories, divided into Rooms, that have no intercourse one with another, the lower Story consists of Warehouses for Goods, and the upper divided into little Chambers, where Strangers that are Travellers Lodge, but they must furnish themselves with all necessaries, or otherways they must want both Furniture and Provisions.

The Karvanserais are built after the same fashion, only the Stone work reaches but to the first Story, and the rest is Wood and Brick, whereas the Hans have entire Stone Walls of a good thickness for their better securities against Pilferers. They have each of them but one Gate, and in the latter indigent Persons are permitted to Lodg, from half a Crown to a Crown a Month.

The next thing of Note in the City is the Seraglio, which Christians and Jews are prohibited to enter, except Ambassadors, and some few Attendance when they have their Audience, and then some crowd in with them that are not concerned, or rather bribe their way, but it is very dangerous for them to pass any further than the Second Court, and further I could not gain access, though I profered liberally, and the Turks rarely refuse Money where they can oblige one for it, and therefore I shall give a description as far as I could observe, and something over according to the best information I could get.

The Seraglio is the Prince's Pallace, but of very irregular building; it is built on a point of Land that juts out into the Sea, as I have before mentioned, and surrounded with Walls of a greyish Stone, adorned at top with a Parapet and Battlement, suitable to the City Walls; it is near 4 miles in compass, but the greatest part is Gardens; the Building clusters together, like the ancient building of low

Caſtles or Fortifications, ſo that on the out ſide they have nothing of Magnificence, except a few guilt Spires and Globes; the chief Entry is near *Sancta Sophia*, and the Gate is like that of the entrance into many Ancient Cities, without either beautiful Architecture, or Ornament; yet the Capigy keep their Court of Guards under it, and carefully watch the entrance.

Paſſing this Gate it leads into a large Court, where on the right Hand is the Apartment for ſuch as fall ſick in the Seraglio, with matted Sopha's along the Walls, ſo that they are no better lodged then in Hoſpitals; on the left Hand is a Magazine for furniſhing 1000 Men, that the Grand Signior's Domeſticks may, upon any ſudden Inſurrection in the City, defend the Palace, and the Perſon of their Emperor; though notwithſtanding this precaution, ſeveral of them have been depoſed by the Rabble and Soldery, and come by violent Deaths, as their Hiſtories make mention at large.

There being little elſe remarkable in this Court, I paſſed into the Second, fronted with two large Porticoes; on one ſide are the Grand Signior's Kitchens, where they Dreſs for Him, his Women, and ſuch as live at his Charge in the *Seraglio*; and on the other ſide are his Stables, where 100 Horſes may conveniently ſtand, and many Apartments where the Officers Lodg; and this great Court is entered on Horſeback by none but the Grand Signior, all others alight at the Gate: It is not ſo big as the firſt, but conſiſts of a Square, extending 200 Paces every way; there is round it a Gallery in the Form of a Cloyſter, ſupported by a great many Marble Pillars, and covered with Lead; and at the back of that there are Domes, ranging from one end of the Court to the other, covered with Lead; as the former, and on the right Hand, where the Kitchins are, the Stables I mentioned being towards the Sea. The Janiſaries draw up in this Court to the right Hand, and the Horſe to the Left; in the middle there is a delicate Fountain, ſhaded with Cypreſs, and Scycamore

more Trees; and heretofore near this Fountain, the Grand Signiors caused the Heads of the Bassa's, and other great Men of the Court that displeased them, to be cut off, as a Terror to others; for the Government is Despotical, and the Lives of the Subjects are at the disposal of the Prince. On the left Hand, at the end of the Court, is a Hall, where the Divan or Council of State sits, and on the Right, a Door which gives entry into that, and is more properly called the *Seraglio*, and none but those who have particular Orders can pass it.

Very near this Seraglio, within the same enclosure is another building Founded by *Constantine* the Great, and intended a Pallace, but now it is called the *Old Seraglio*, having many additional Buildings, yet not fair on the out side, though these and the other have costly Gildings and Paintings within; the Turks in general having little regard what out side show their Houses make, so they appear Sumptuous and Magnificent within. It is surrounded with Walls of an unusual heighth, without any Windows on the out side, the better to prevent the Women from being seen; and here the Reigning Sultan shuts up the Wives of his Predecessors, whom he Sequesters from the World, except he likes any of them himself, or pleases to bestow them on the great Men of his Empire, for their signal Services; othewise this is a kind of a Nunnery for Life.

There is yet a Third Apartment, properly called a *Seraglio*, joyning close to that of the Grand Signior, so that he can pass to it by Galleries privately, when he has a mind to divert himself there. What more I could gather by sight at a distance is, that this place which is so much talked of, as the Pallace of the greatest Emperor in the World, especially as to largeness of Territories, gives but an inconsiderable Prospect; and one at a distance can form nothing regular in it, it looking like a confused Mass of Building, in Apartments and Domes.

The Grand Signior has here his Officers, who have a great many under them; most part of them

are Eunuchs, Blacks of *Æthiopia*; and others, that are moſt comely of their kind; they formerly were only Gelt, but it is ſaid, that Sultan *Solyman*, one day ſeeing a Gelding back a Mare, and perform, as he ſuppoſed, the office of a Stallion, came Home and cauſed them all to be ſmoothed by the Belly, to prevent their dabling with his Women, of which Wound a great number died, and now they make Water through a Silver Pipe, which they put into the orrifice of the Root of their Yard, to prevent polluting themſelves, by ſcattering their Urine on their Veſtments; for then, till they have Abſolution, they think they are unclean, as I ſhall ſhew hereafter; and now they cut off the Genitals of Children they buy, or have as Tribute, upon the Borders of *Æthiopia*. and other Negro Countries; and though many die under this uſage, for it is not done till they are 8 or 10 years old, that they may ſee whether they are Docil or Ingenious; yet they have enough to ſerve in all the Seraglio's in *Europe* and *Aſia*; for there are others belonging to the Grand Signior, beſide thoſe at *Conſtantinople*; and many to the Baſſa's, and Governors of Provinces in divers Countries; and theſe are ſo Jealous, or rather Envious, which makes them to watch over the Women ſo narrowly, that they are rarely too cunning for them; they are lodged in a ſeparate Apartment, together; and the ſingle Teſtimony of one of them, againſt the greateſt Subject in the Empire, coſts the party his Life; nay, a bare Sollicitation, or too near a View, without any Act, is ſufficient for a Strangling; as for Example, Sultan *Amurat* uſed a Proſpective Glaſs, to diſcover the Actions of thoſe that were in the City, and by that means, eſpying a Man at a Window, with the like Proſpective, taking a view of one of his Sultana's, walking in the Garden of the *Seraglio*; he thereupon ſent a Capigi, with 4 Mutes, who entered the Houſe, and immediately Strangled the over curious unfortunate.

Theſe Eunuchs have, in a manner, the ſole Government of the *Seraglio*, but particularly of the Women;

Women; and when the Sultana's take the Air in the Garden, the Bostangis, or Gardeners, stand round the Walls, holding Staves with long and broad pieces of Cloth fastned to them, which makes them as though they were Blind, and is much higher than the Garden Wall, to which their Backs are turned, it being Death to look, if any of the Eunuchs perceive it, and complain of it: and this Jealousie proceeds so far, that no Boat is suffered to come within 400 Paces of the Garden-Wall, though it is very high, if the Sultana's be walking there; and if any presume it, there are Sentinels advantageously placed, to Fire at them; so that those who have business by Water, are constrained to fetch a great compass about. But, notwithstanding this Jealousie, which, in a great or less Degree reigns all over the Empire, the Turks esteem Women as very inconsiderable Creatures, without Souls, denying that they go to Heaven; That they were only made to serve for the use of Man, and be obedient to him, and their main end was designed for Generation; otherwise, unless to satisfie their Lusts, they esteem them scarce Rational, and little better then Beasts: In a word, these of Quality are but splendid Slaves, and the meaner sort miserable ones.

The Eunuchs have the Charge of bringing up the Grand Signior's Pages, called *Ichneglians*, who are the beautifulest Youths that can be got, and for the most part of Christian Extraction, but taken so young from their Parents, that they easily Educate them in the Mahometan Superstition with great care, till they are about 28 years of Age, and are taught such Arts, and used to such Exercise as their Inclination chiefly leads them to. If they are of good natural parts, and prompt in understanding, they usually rise to the greatest preferments in the Ottoman Empire; if not, they are turned out, and entered into pay and employments of other natures, living but meanly; but whilst they live in the *Seraglio*, the greatest Preferment they can rise to, is to be of the number of the Forty, who are neerest

the Grand Signior's Perſon, and theſe the Eunuchs look narrowly after, leaſt they ſlip among the Women, or defile one another by unnatural Luſt, for theſe are not diſmembred; among the 40 mentioned, there are four in high Eſteem, *viz.* the *Selihtar* or *Sword-bearer*; the *Tſchoader*, who carries the Cock; the *Ibrictar*, who carries Water ready to pour on the Grand Signior's Hands when he requires it; and the *Kuptar*, who carries the Pot of Sorbet to give him when he calls for it. There are Seminaries of theſe *Ichnogleans*, as at *Pezá*, *&c.* where they are Educated, and growing up, ſent to *Conſtantinople*, to be entertained in the Grand *Seraglio*.

The next that make a conſiderable Figure in the *Seraglio*, are the Boſtangis or Gardeners, over whom is a Baſſa, called the *Boſtangi* Baſſa; he has his Lodging in the *Seraglio*, and the Priviledge of wearing his Beard, not any beſide him and the Grand Signior doing it, the reſt being Shaved in token of Servitude; He is very great with the Prince, and always ſteers his Barge when he goes to take the Air on the Sea, ſo that having his Ear, and liberty to Diſcourſe with him, all the Grandees ſtand in fear of him, and much conſider his Power, labouring to keep him their Friend: and when any conſiderable Perſon is put to Death in *Conſtantinople*, he is ſent to fetch his Head.

There are in this City many little *Seraglioes* belonging to the great Men of the Court, but on the out-ſide, they look much like old decaying Buildings, and ſome hold, that they built them without external Beauty and Ornament, becauſe the Grand Signior ſhould not be Jealous of their Pride, as aſpiring to too much greatneſs, but within it is otherways, for they have lovely Apartments, adorned with Gold and Azure; the Floors are covered with Rich Carpets, ſo that thoſe who enter pull of their Shooes, to prevent any injury they may do them; the Walls of moſt of them are faced with poliſhed Tiles, like *China* Ware; in their Halls, and Chambers, they have riſings about a Foot, which

which they call Divans, covered with richer Carpets than the Floor, and Imbrodered Cushions placed in order on them. Here they Rest, receive Visits, and spend the best part of the Day, and the Womens Apartments in all these, are separated from those of the Lodgings; none but the Master of the House, and some Eunuchs, are suffered to enter where they are; the Women stir little abroad, having Baths in their Houses, with suitable Attendance, and other convenient Necessaries.

Thus having described all that is worthy of Note in *Constantinople*, I shall speak something of the Neighbouring places, which may properly be termed the Suburbs of this great City; and in the first place *Galata* is a very pleasant place, separated from the City only by the *Port*, which may be crossed in Caiques, or Wherries, who are always attending; however, taking a compass you may go by Land, and have a very fine Prospect of the Country. This Town is pretty Large, and formerly belonged to the *Genoese*, and then was more considerable, for it held out some time against the whole Power of the Ottoman's, after *Mahomet* the Second had taken *Constantinople*; the Houses are Fair, and well Built, mostly Inhabited by *Greeks*, though it is the usual Residence of *Franks*, and they have five Monasteries there, which much Beautifie the place; and near the Sea side, there is the finest Fish-Market that may be seen in any Country, for the Fishmonger's-shops are stocked with such numbers of various kinds of Fish, on Market days, that Strangers admire how they should procure them; the *Greeks* keep many Taverns here, so that there are frequent disorders, by reason of drunken People, though great care is taken to prevent it.

Pera, and *Tophana* are two other pleasant little Towns; the Former is appointed for the Residence of most Ambassadors; those of the Emperor of *Germany*, King of *Poland*, and Republick of *Ragousa*, having usually their Residence in *Constantinople*; the French Ambassador's House is here, very state-

ly, having a curious Proſpect of the *Seraglio*. The latter is the place where they caſt their great Guns, and that in the Turkiſh Language ſeems to give it its Name; the Houſes in both are very finely Built, riſing and falling pleaſantly, ſo that at a diſtance, they ſeem to repreſent a kind of an Amphitheatre.

To theſe I might add *Caſſumpaſha*, which lies firſt if one goes by Land, and appears like a great Village; her Galleys and Ships are Built and laid up with great conveniency, for it is accommodated with 120 Arched Docks, or Houſes; in the way to this the Ocmeidan, or Field of Arrows, a very ſpacious place, where the Turks exerciſe ſhooting with the Bow; and many reſort thither to pray for ſucceſs on their Arms, and any thing they ſtand in need of.

One may go in a Caique from *Conſtantinople* to *Schudaret*, which the Turks call *Iſcodar*, it being but a good Mile. In the way there is a Tower built on a Rock in the Sea pretty ſtrong, the Guns command the Port, and the Mouths of the *White* and *Black-Sea*; the latter is ſo called, not becauſe the Water is Black, as ſome imagine, but by reaſon of the many caſualties that happen upon the riſing of ſudden Storms, that caſt Veſſels away, to the loſs of many Lives; and beſide, it not being very broad, there are ſeveral Currants cauſed by the *Danube*, *Boriſtenhes*, *Tunais*, and other ſmaller Rivers, that diſcharge their Waters into it, and occaſion many Eddies that drive Ships on the Rocks, where they are lodged or ſplit; but to return,

In the Tower I mentioned, is a fine Well of freſh Water, and ſome call it *Leander*'s Tower, but for what reaſon I know not. *Schudaret* is a pleaſant Village on the *Aſian* Shoar; The Grand Signior has a ſtately *Seraglio* in it, beautified with lovely Gardens; and a little lower, on the ſame ſide, ſtands *Chalcedon*, anciently very Famous, and Celebrated by the four General Councils held there; yet time has laid the Structures of Antiquity in Ruins, ſo that at preſent it is but an inconſiderable Village,

which

which stands like the Ruins of *Troy*, as a Memorial there was once so famed a place. In another walk of four Hours from *Constantinople*, is the *Prince's* Isle, a very pleasant place to take the Air in, for though it is not great, it contains two little Towns, inhabited by *Greeks*. The Coast of the *Black Sea* is also a curious place to take the Air upon. This is the *Thracian Bosphorus*, which coming from the *Black Sea* to *Constantinople*, mingles its Waters with the *White Sea*, and is but a Mile over at the broadest place, no more than 12 Miles in length, and all about this Channel are a great many lovely Houses and Gardens, so that passing it, one would conclude it the loveliest Prospect in the World; the Fruits are here Plentiful, and very Excellent; on the *Asian* side there is a pretty Castle, where Sultan *Ibrahim* was hid 20 Years, when Sultan *Amurat* put his other Brothers to Death; and along the Shoar are other Villages, in which one may be furnished with what is needful.

In this Channel they take great quantities of good Fish of divers Sorts, and amongst them the *Sword Fish*, so called, because it has a long broad Bone on the Snout of it, like a Sword, or rather jaged like a Saw on the edges; there are store of Dolphins, usually playing about the Boats, as also many other curious varieties; so that I may conclude, *Constantinople*, and the Towns adjacent, to be exceeding pleasantly Scituated, which having thus sufficiently described, I now pass to other useful Observations, during my stay in the Chief City of the *Ottoman* Empire.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

The Original of the Turks, *and Extent of the* Ottoman *Empire; The Officers, Civil, and Eccleſiaſtical; their Forces, and Order; with many things relating to their Religion, Cuſtoms, and divers other matters.*

THE *Turks* are held to be Originally a People of *Scythia*, though ſome will have them the Off-Spring of the Ten Jewiſh Tribes, carried into Captivity by *Salmenaſer*; and the Jews to curry Favour, would have them believe however, that the firſt conſiderable Figure they made, was upon their coming out of *Turcomania*, under *Tangrolipix*, a petty Captain, to aſſiſt the *Perſians*, and at length poſſeſſed themſelves of that Kingdom, their Captain being made King in the Field, upon the Death of the *Perſian* Sultan, who falling from his Horſe, died there; and immediately ſetled the large Empire in *Aſia*, but it was ruined by the *Tartars*, yet they renewed it again under *Akoman Gazi*, or the Warlike, about 246 Years after, building it on the Ruins of the *Perſian*, *Babylonian*, *Grecian*, and *Roman* Monarchies, which till late years, they have continued to ſpread wider, ſo that it now conſiſts of part of *Perſia*, almoſt all *Greece*, the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, the greateſt part or *Arabia*, the Iſlands of *Cyprus*, *Rhodes*, *Mitylene*, *Negropont*, *Chio* or *Scio*, *Candia*, and many other Iſlands. The Empire of *Treprezom*, the Kingdom of *Colchis*, now called *Mingrelia*, *Tunis*, *Algires*, *Dalmatia*, *Illizia*, *Tribalenia*, *Bulgaria*, *Valachia*, *Moldavia*, part of *Hungary*,

ry, &c. so that they hold all the Sea Coast, from the Confines of *Epidaurus* the utmost bounds of *Europe* Westward, to the Mouth of the River *Tanais*, now called *Don*, with all that lies between the City of *Belgrade* and *Constantinople*; and Southward, all the Sea Coast from *Velex* to *Belis*, the boundard of the Kingdom of *Fez*, unto the *Arabian* Gulf, or *Red-Sea*, and so proportionably every way; the greatness of which, may be the better Conjectured, by the vastness of part of it, for the *Mear* of *Mætis*, which is all at the Grand Signior's Command, is 1000 Miles in Compass, and the *Euxine* or *Black-Sea* in Circuit 2700 Miles; the *Mediterranean* Coast, which is subject to him, is in Compass about 8000 Miles; so that he may pass in his own Dominions, from *Tauris* to *Belgrade*, 3180 Miles, or thereabouts, and almost the like distance from *Derbent* to *Adena*, and from *Balsora* in the *Persian* Gulf, to *Tremisena* in *Barbary*, may be reckoned little less than 4000 Miles; however, of late days the weakness of this vast Empire has very much appeared, which shows it is declining to a Period; their Naval strengths having been inconsiderable, ever since their total defeat in the Gulf of *Lepanto*, by the *Spaniards*, *Venetians*, &c. Their Land-Forces promise little better of late, as having been worsted in several Battles by the *Germans*, *Poles*, *Venetians*, &c. so that this once Terror of the World, seems to be dispised rather than feared; the vastness of the *Ottoman* Territories, causing such infinite expence of Treasure, that the many Millions yearly accruing by Customs, Impositions, and many other ways, are not a sufficient Supply to raise and bring any considerable Armies into the Field. Yet the Grand Signior will not abate any thing of his Grandeur, but boasts himself the mighty Emperor of the World, to do, and not to do whatever he pleases; alledging, that the strength of the Heavens and the Earth are given to him, and his Flatterers make him believe it; his Apartment in the *Seraglio* is hung with Cloth of Gold, gilded Skins and Tapestries, interwoven

with

with Silk and Gold, wherein are lively represented the Wars of the *Ottoman* Emperors; the Chamber he lodges in is adorned with rich Painting, Gilding, and precious Stones, that cast a very glorious light in the Night: Six Pages do him Service in his Chamber by Night, watching his Person, two and two, by turns, with lighted Torches, the one sitting at the Head, and the other at the Feet of his Bed: When he attires himself, they put into his Pocket 1000 Aspers, and 20 Ducats of Gold, and all that remains not given away that day, they have, when he puts of his Cloaths, for their Fees, for he rarely puts on one Aparrel twice; and when he goes a Hunting, or to divert himself, his Purse-Bearer carries great store of Treasure to distribute; and vast quantities of all sorts of Provisions follow him, though many times they are not made use of.

The Chief Officers of the Empire are, 1. The Grand Visier, who acts immediately under the Grand Signior, and by him he speaks to such as have important business; for no Ambassador is admitted to the Grand Signior's presence, but on his first Arrival, when he delivers his Letters of Credit, and Present, for particularly without the latter, none can have Audience; all other Audiences are had of the Visier, who is likewise called the *Capi-Aga*; he has power of Life and Death, is General of the Army when the Grand Signior is not in the Field, and all take their Directions from him. 2. The *Casnader* Bassa is next in Rank, as to Secular Affairs; his Office is to take an Account of the Treasury. 3. The *Chilergy* Bassa, or Cup-Bearer. 4. The *Seraglì Agasi*, Steward, or Master of the Houshold. 5. The *Chiler Agasi*, or *Serinder* Bassa, overseer of the Seraglio of Women, who is always an Eunuch. 6. The *Bostangi* Bassa, or Chief Gardener, of who is already spoken. 7. The *Caimacan* of *Constantinople*.

The Grand Signior has always near him, six Mutes Men, very lusty in Body, that are born Deaf, and consequently are Dumb. These are very Bloody and Cruel, being the Ministers of his Vengeance,

Vengeance, to Strangle whom he pleases; and when any one is Strangled in the *Seraglio*, the Bodies are thrown out of a particular Window appointed for that purpose into the Sea, and as many Guns are fired, to give Notice, in terror to others, as there are Strangled Bodies thrown out. There are in all 40 of these Mutes, some of which he keeps as his Buffoons, to play with for his pastime.

He has 8 Lance-bearers, called *Mutasurach*, who attend him with Launces, when he goes abroad, and these are subject to no Command but his own. The Eunuchs of the *Seraglio*, I have mentioned elsewhere; the *Turks* call them *Hundurni*, and under their Care, there are constantly 500 Virgins, most of *Europe*, the choicest Beauties that can be procured; they are taken from their Parents under 8 Years, and are brought up to Work in the *Seraglio*, as in a Nunnery; and when the Grand Signior is desirous to enjoy any of them, the day before he gives notice to the Chief of the Eunuchs, who Commands the rest to set them in order in their best Attire; then the Grand Signior, attended by him, walks between them, as they stand in Rows on either hand, exposing all their Beauties and winning Allurements to tempt him, and where he likes, he drops his Handkerchief, of which he has choice hanging at his Girdle, which the Eunuch takes up, delivers to the Virgin, and immediately putting her into a Coach, carries her to Rich Lodgings, where she is gorgously attired, and so he does by all that are this way chosen, and there they remain till they are sent for in order, by the Grand Signior to his Bed, for he never Marries, but when one is brought to his Bed side; he gives her a Golden Head tire, and 10000 Aspers, causing her to live a part, and daily encreasing her Maintenance, and then she is called a Sultana or Sultaness, and the eldest Son, if he out-lives his Father succeeds to the Throne, and puts all his other Brothers (if they fall into his Hands) to Death, causing them to be Strangled with a Bow string; for it is held unlawful to shed

the

the Sacred *Ottoman* Blood, as they call it, on the Ground, though the Sultanas, and great Men of the Court hide ſome of them, till the Fury is over, and preſerve their Lives, as it has three or four times happened; and this cruel Policy they uſe, to prevent the diſmembring the Empire by Civil broils, and the better to ſecure the Throne to themſelves.

There are about 300 Perſons called *Sollacchi*, who continually march near the Grand Signior's Perſon, and are as it were his Guard; and theſe are under the Command of the Aga of the Janiſaries. They are attired in Linnen Garments, hanging down beneath their Knees, and over them they ware quilted Waſtcoats, with half Sleeves of Taffaty, Damask, or Sattin; and on their Heads a Cap and Feather, carrying Bows and Arrows. There are another kind of Footmen, called *Peichi*, exceeding ſwift in running, and theſe are employed in the nature of Lackeys, or Foot-Poſts, and are attired in Cloth of Gold, with a Girdle of the ſame; the Caps are in faſhion of our Butter pots, with a Silver Pike ſtanding out before in the nature of a Horn.

There are 4000 Porters that give attendance in the Court, the Chief of them is the *Capigi* Baſſa.

The Judges they call *Cadis*, who are divided into all parts of the Empire, in Cities, or great Towns, to decide Controverſies; yet their Suits, eſpecially between the Turks, are very few, and they make a quick diſpatch of buſineſs, there being rarely Advocates allowed, to Procraſtinate buſineſs; nor do they admit of Evidence in Writing, always taking it by word of Mouth, ſo that Bills, Bonds, and other Contracts, are not ſignificant in *Turkey*; yet there is much Bribery uſed, and he that can give the Judge moſt, uſually carries the Cauſe. They puniſh Crimes with great ſeverity, and ſo ſpeedily, that rarely Theſts are committed by any private Turk, and the People in all Cities are careful to prevent Murthers, for if the Murtherer eſcape, a great ſum of Money is required of the Perſon be-

fore

fore whose Door the Murthered Body is found, which is exacted with Rigor.

The Divan consists of the Grand Visier, and several other Visiers of the Bench, and there the important business of State is Controverted, and Causes heard; of all which the Grand Visier gives the Grand Signior an account; nor dares he dissemble, or hide any thing, as knowing the Grand Signior has a Window into it, before which hangs a thin Curtain, through which he can see and hear, but not be seen; and therefore the Visiers know not but he may be always there in the Divan time, which keeps such an awe over them, that they do better Justice than in other places, to prevent their Heads flying off, as it sometimes has happen'd, upon the least defect or partiality. Next to the Bassas, the Beglerbegs, or Lords of Lords, are in highest Authority in Temporal matters; they have Command over Provinces and Armies, and under them are divers *Zanzacks*, as their Deputies; but their Government is during the Prince's pleasure; and the Chief of these is the Beglerbeg of *Romania* in *Greece*, under whose Command are 21 Zanzacks. These usually exercise and bring to the Field the Spahi and Tiraarcots, the *Turks* best Horsemen: These latter are certain Horsemen, usually on the Frontiers, that for Lands allotted them out of the Grands Signior's Conquests, are bound to give their attendance, and serve in the Wars upon Summons. The Spahi are most *Europeans*, trained up Young to manage a Horse, and exercise Cavalry, having Pay. There are also *Spachoglanians*, *Silictarians*, and *Olofagians*, who have Lands or Pensions assigned them to serve in the Wars; for none, as in other Countries, can purchase Lands for Inheritance, the whole Empire being in Fee-simple the Grand Signior's, and all things revokable at his pleasure.

The Horsemen march under a white Banner, mostly Armed with strong Coats, Bows, Arrows, Fire-Arms, Cimitars, Battle-Axes, *&c.* There are

are another ſort of Horſemen, called *Caripices*, but not above 800: Theſe are uſually the Grand Signior's Guard, ſurrounding him in the middle of the Batallion of the Janiſaries, and are Fellows ſo deſperate. that they will venture on any Enterpriſe; being for the moſt part Sons of great Commanders, trained up from their Youth in this way.

The Janiſaries are the *Turk's* beſt Footmen; and theſe at firſt are taken when Children from their Parents, moſtly Chriſtians, but brought up in the Mahometan Superſtition; inured to all manner of hardſhip, and have Officers over them, to teach them the uſe of Arms; and theſe encloſe the Grand Signior when he marches with the Army: They ware white Caps; their Arms are Harquibuſes, and ſharp cutting Cimitars, who ſince their firſt Inſtitution, as a Nurſery of Soldery, have been the chief ſupport of the *Ottoman* Empire; they are commanded by an Aga, or Chief Commander, to whom nothing is ſo fatal as their Love and Reſpect, for that creats in the Grand Signior a Jealouſie of his aſpiring, and on this Account many of the Aga's have loſt their Lives, but moſtly they are put to Death privately, to prevent their being reſcued; and if he be a Court Favourite, the Janiſaries are diſtruſtful of him, and ſometimes on failure of their Pay, and other Occaſions, Mutiny, and Murther him; ſo that on either hand he ſtands very tickliſh in his high promotion.

The Janiſaries in *Conſtantinople*, *&c.* have great Halls, or Apartments, where they Sleep together, their Beds being placed on either ſide; and all thoſe of a Battallion uſually Dine together, the younger being appointed to ſerve the elder, and if any one abſent himſelf from his Lodging, unleſs upon leave, or ſome particular occaſion, he is ſure to be ſeverely Cudgeled, yet obliged, by way of ſubmiſſion to his puniſhment, to Kiſs the Hand that inflicts it.

In time of Peace their employs are different; ſome are appointed to wait on Ambaſſadors, others on Merchants, and Conſuls, or ſuch as Travel through the

the *Turkish* Territories. They have power to Arrest Malefactors, and see good Orders kept, being in great Esteem with all Men: so that if they go into the Market to buy any thing, they will have it at their own price, the Vender not gain-saying; but this may be concluded to proceed rather from the effects of Fear than Love; and they carry such a Vogue, that no Grand Signior thinks his Throne setled, till they approve of him; so that to purchase their good Opinion, the new Sultan pays off their Arrears, distributes Money amongst them, and encreases their Stipends.

Though these are the Chief Strength of Foot, yet there others, but not so serviceable, *viz.* The *Acoujces*, which serve as a forlorn hope; these recieve no Pay, but have liberty to plunder in War time, allowing the Sultan a fifth part of the spoil. The Asapi, which are Rabble, raised as there is need for them, and serve as Pioneers, being of so small account, that they are set in the Front of the Battle to receive the first shock, and tire the Enemy with slaughtering them; and when a Town is Besieged, they are set first to scale the Walls, to amuse the Besieged, and their slain Bodies serve as a Rampart to mount on, or fill up the Ditch; and so little are these miserable Creatures esteemed, that a Spahi having taken five of them in a Civil War, offered them to a Butcher for a Sheep's Head, which he refusing, the Spahi swore if he would not make the exchange, he would cut of their Heads, and boyl them, and was preparing to do it; but the Butcher, though a Man of Blood, seeing him in earnest, gave him the Sheep's Head to save the poor Wretches Lives, and afterwards set them at liberty.

The Grand Signior has always 6000 Gunners in Pay, most of them Rhenegado Christians, turned Mahometans, many of them are *French* Men; and these are called *Topegi*; Twelve thousand others are in Pay, to look after his Ammunition; his Carriages are very numerous, and his Train of Artil-

lery large. There are 3000 attending the Grand Signior's pleaſure, called *Chiaus*, or *Chiaux*, who act in the nature of Serjeants at Arms, and are in good Eſteem, being often employed in Embaſſies; but their chief employ is to carry Letters, or Commendations from the Grand Signior, or Grand Viſier, and are impowered to apprehend Malefactors, yet go not to the Wars, unleſs the Grand Signior is there. Theſe are Commanded by a Baſſa of their own order, who is of ſuch Credit, that when he is ſent for any Man's Head, though he has no Warrant in Writing, his Authority is not diſputed.

When the *Turkiſh* Armies March, it is with as great ſilence as may be; they are under a regular Diſcipline, and live very ſparing in Diet; for the moſt part, on Rice, dried Fruits, Bread baked in the Aſhes, and powdered Fleſh dried in the Sun, rarely complaning as the Chriſtians do of want, but patiently endure and wait till they can be ſupplied; no Women are found in their Armies, and the Servants attending on great Men are Liſted, and do the Office of Soldiers in their March; they obſerve the beck of the Hand, or ſhew of the Countenance, as a Command, and underſtand to obey it; nor dare they in their March, enter into any Corn Field, nor plunder in any friendly Country, as other Soldiers do, under pain of Death, ſo that the People, as with us, are not concerned when great Armies march, as knowing they ſhall loſe nothing if they look to it, that it be not privately ſtolen; and Theft is ſeverely puniſhed amongſt them.

To ſupport this, and other Charges in the Empire, the Grand Signior's Incoms are accounted 20 Millions a Year, moſt of it ariſing from Preſents, Cuſtoms, and Confiſcation; though in his Dominions, whole Kingdoms lie in a manner waſt, by reaſon of the vaſt number of Men conſumed in War, or rather, induſtry is diſcouraged; for ſhould they get Wealth by their Labour, it is theirs but during the Prince's pleaſure, and none are certain how ſoon he may ſtrip them of all. As

As for the Religion of the Turks, it is no Ancienter than *Mahomet*, an Impostor, Born in *Arabia*, who set it abroach about the Reign of *Heraclitus*, the Emperor, for taking his Tenents from the *Arian* and *Nestorian* Heresies, denying the Divinity of our Saviour, he drew a Multitude after him, and becoming Powerful, forced many to follow his Opinion; and since it has been carried on by the Sword to spread so wide. The *Jewish*, and *Christian* Religion being then most prevalent, after dilating with himself, he leaned to the first, and mixed his own wild Notions with what he took out of the Mosaick Law, and from the Custom of the *Jews*, as a distinction between Clean and Unclean Meats, Circumcision; but the latter not performed at the end of 8 Days, as the *Jews* Custom is, but at the end of 8 Years, when the Child is able to make a Confession of his Belief, and speak in the *Arabick* Tongue, *viz. There is but one God, and* Mahomet *is his Prophet, one God, and equal Prophets.* At the Circumcision, there is Feasting three Days, for all the Friends and Kinsfolks. The Female Children only speak the Words; yet the Mooriſh Mahometans, in some parts, use a kind of a Circumcision to their Females, cutting off a bit of the Nimphæ. If any Christian turn Turk, he is led about the Streets, as in Triumph, and receives Presents and Gifts as he passes, to encourage him to persevere in his new undertaking; but the Men, be they of what Age they will, that so renounce their Faith, must be Circumcised, yet the Turks afterward set Light by those that Renounce, and will rarely Trust or Prefer them, saying, *They are not worthy to be trusted that Renounce their Faith, be it what it will.*

Their Laws is contained in the *Alcoran*, wherein among other things, one God, the Maker of the World, and of all Things, is owned. Can the *Turks* Honour Christ as a great Prophet, but deny him to be the Son of God? They are forbidden by their Law to Worship Images, or to have any set up in their Mosques; but their *Alcoran* indulges them in

Senſuallity, and promiſes them much of Worldly Felicity, or ſuch like pleaſures as we have here, in another World, but obtain'd and carried on with greater Eaſe and Happineſs, for their Paradiſe conſiſts in the enjoyment of handſom Women, and ſuch like Trifles, though here they look on them to have no Souls, and ſcarcely Rational Creatures.

They hold their Sabbath on our Friday, and their Lent laſts 30 days, during which time they neither Eat nor drink in the Day, but take their repaſt after Sun-ſet; but not till they have Notice by the Voice of Men from the Minarets or Steeples; they alſo abſtain from Women; Wine is forbidden in their Law, yet many times they Carouſe it ſo luſtily in private, that they get Drunk; this Lent they call *Ramadan*.

Their *Bairam*, or *Eaſter*, is continued with great ſhew three Days, but it begins not preciſely at a time, becauſe it muſt commence at the New of the Moon, yet not till ſhe appears; and truſty Perſons are ſent to watch on the Mountains, and high places, to ſee her, and he that firſt diſcovers her has a Reward, and then it begins with Proclamation; they have other publick times, as the little *Bairam*, *&c.*

If during the reading of the Law they look Back, ſcratch their Heads, or do any thing that is unſeemly, they think they have loſt the benefit they were to have received at that time; and I muſt confeſs they ſeem to be very preciſe in their Devotions, though generally very Ignorant in Learning; yet of late, ſome of the better ſort put their Children to learn the *Arabick* Tongue, becauſe the *Alcoran* is Written in it.

By their Law they have leave to Marry as many Wives as they can maintain, and when any of them proves with Child, the Husband muſt not Carnally know her till ſhe is delivered. There is another kind of Marriage Contract during Pleaſure, called *Kebin*, moſtly practiſed by Strangers, who, for a certain Sum, ſignifying their intention to the *Cadi*, who notes down the Contract, may have a Wife

for

for as long as he pleases; but when he turns her away, he must give her what he bargained for, and keep the Children, if she has any by her. The *Turks* often Divorce their Wives with shewing little or no Cause, but the Wives have not that Priviledge. They must prove before the Judge, that their Husbands are not able to keep them, or that they have attempted to use them against the course of Nature, and the like. If a *Turk* debauch a *Christian* Woman, both of them, upon Conviction, must suffer Death, unless he can perswade her to change her Faith, and so it is with a Christian and a Turkish Woman, he must turn *Turk*, or be burnt, unless by largely Bribing the *Cadi*, he can get it off, which sometimes happens, if she be of mean Rank.

Notwithstanding this liberty to Marry, and take so many Wives, the *Turks* are great *Sodomites*, and the Bassa's, *&c.* are guilty of keeping handsome Youths, whom they purchase as Slaves, to satisfie their Brutal Lusts this way, yet they keep it as private as may be.

The Chief Interpreter of their Law is the Mufti, or Arch-Priest. The Grand Signior nominates and chuses him from among the Learned Men in their Law. He is greatly Reverenced by the *Turks*, and termed the Head of their Church, and the decider of all Controversies arising in matters of Religion. All the Bassa's are subject to his Directions, as a Rule to them in their Government. He abaseth himself not to set down in the Divan, only he passes very stately through it, when he is sent for by the Grand Signior, who rises at his approach to do him Honour, then places him by him on his Seat, and discourses familiarly with him about matters of Religion, State, or Previous Questions; and this Honour is allowed to no other.

Next to the Mufti, in this sort of Dignity, are the Cadile-Squires, Talismen, or two Doctors of the Law, whose business it is to examine the Cadi's, or Judges, dispersed in the Provinces of the Empire; and these for the most part are attendant on the

Grand Signior. One has Juriſdiction over the *European* Cadi's, and the other over the reſt, and are Sovereign Judges within their own Juriſdiction, in all cauſes about matters of Religion, and are, as it were, Patriarchs. Theſe are of great Authority, having places in the Divan, and in the Council of Baſſa's, where they are conſulted in the weighty Affairs of the Empire.

There are a degree of Churchmen not belonging to their Law, called *Mulli*, and theſe are inſtead of Biſhops, but directed in their proceedings by the Mufti.

Another ſort there are, called *Nuderiſi*, who act in the Nature of Suffragans, and have under them ſeveral young Doctors of the Law, called *Naipi*, who are conſtituted, in the abſence of the Cadi's, to hear and Redreſs grievances.

Next to the foregoing, are the *Hagi*, who write Books, and inferior to them are the *Caſſii*, who Read to them as they Write. Theſe are their ſeveral degrees of Churchmen and Lawyers, for the *Turks* are govern'd by a kind of an Eccleſiaſtical Law, according to their *Alcoran*. They have many Colleges, which they call *Medreſſa*'s, Scituate in *Conſtantinople*, and divers other Cities.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

The Belief of the Turks, *and many other things practised among them; as their Charity, Mourning at Funerals, Games, Just Observances,* &c.

THE *Turks* believe that after any Person is Dead and layed in the Grave, the Angels come to examine them, and that they have Angels to guard them in their Life time, every one being appointed to a particular Member; and when they take up any piece of Paper in the Street, least the Name of God should be writ on it, they will not take it along with them, for fear of putting it to prophane Uses, but stick it on the next Wall, so that the Cranies are often found stuck full of them; yet they will Swear by the Name of God, but it is to what is Truth, for otherways they are looked on as Ignominious, and Infidels. As to their Belief, they hold that divers Beasts go to Paradise, as the Camel of *Selch*: (one of their Prophets) the Ram of *Abraham*, offered up in Sacrifice; the Cow of *Moses*, whose Ashes was mingled with the Water of Purification, which seems to be the Golden Calf in *Horeb*; *Solomon*'s Ant; the Parrot of the Queen of *Sheba*. They also believe *Jonas*'s Whale that cast him on dry Land, and *Mahomet*'s Ass shall be there likewise; four Sleepers, and a little Dog, who led them to a Cave in time of Persecution, where they slept 300 Years, which seemed to them but as one Night, for one of them going to buy Victuals when they awaked with Antiquated Money, the time was discovered by the Date of the Coin. They hold in *Paradise*, according to *Mahomet*'s promise, that they

ſhall enjoy Virgins, freſh Coloured, with large Black Eyes, and Beautiful Boys attending them; who at firſt ſhall be but Fifteen, and never exceed Thirty Years of Age, always in a Bloom or Spring of Beauty; and that God ſhall appear to them every Friday, which is their Sabbath; that there they ſhall have Rivers, pleaſant Fields, Gardens, and the like. They ſay thoſe in Hell ſhall Drink ſcalding Water, and Eat of the Fruit of a Tree called *Zacon*, which grows out of the bottom of Hell, and riſes to a great heighth, the Branches of it being like the Heads of Devils; and if thoſe that are in Hell have a little Faith, after they are purged by Fire, to conſume their Sins, they ſhall be waſhed in a Water called *Seizaboul*, and then admitted into Paradiſe; but thoſe that have not Faith when they are conſumed to Aſhes, ſhall be Created a new, and ſo prepared Eternally to endure the Torments; they hold a kind of Purgatory, but they ſay there are many back Doors, by which they may give the Devil the ſlip, if they are watchful and cunning. They Pray for the Dead, and invocate a ſort of Saints of their own making.

The *Turks* have many Fountains, and in waſhing they think they are free from Defilements, even after having lain with their Wives, Noctural Pollutions, their Urin dropping on their Garments, or touch a Dog, and indeed in any other matters that they conceive they are Polluted; and they are ſo Nice in it, that upon Travelling, they will go a great way to ſeek Water, and if they find none, to do it with Sand; and indeed they keep their Bodies in all parts extream cleanly, even to Superſtition, in many Rights and Ceremonies they uſe, as the Abdeſt and Gouſt.

The ſober *Turks* are very Charitable to Men and Beaſts, doing all they can to relieve them in their Neceſſities, ſo that they ſupply the Poor for the moſt part, without putting any to the Shame of appearing in the Streets to Beg; ſome of them when they die, leave Penſions to maintain Beaſts, to keep them during

ring their Natural Lives; and in *Constantinople*, I saw a Bitch who had got into a Corner to cast her Whelps; the *Turks* no sooner saw it, but they made a Wall with Bricks and Stones about her, and several run and fetched Victuals, and other Necessaries, which in a wonderful manner shewed their compassion towards the poor Creature, nor did one or other leave attending her, till the Puppies were taken from her, and she capable of shifting for her self.

Images, as I have already hinted, are prohibited amongst the *Turks*, but they are very desirous of curious Paintings, though they are not Artists at it. There is a prohibition of Usury by their Alcoran, though it is connivingly done by the *Turks*, and the *Jews* practice it frequently. Swines Flesh is counted unclean among them, and some *Turks* would rather die than Eat it; nor dare the Shoomakers use Hog's Bristles in sowing their Shoes, if it should be known, they would be punished. When a *Turk* dies, there is great Mourning; the greater the Quality, the more the Women fall a howling excessively, and those that cannot frame themselves to it, hire those that are accustomed to it, and as often as any Visitants come, the Lamentation is renewed, and when the Corps is in the Grave, they go often thither to Weep, the Widow expressing what good things her deceased Husband has done for her; they often spread Carpets with Victuals, that those that pass by may Eat it, and Pray for the Soul of the deceased. They set at the Head of the Grave a Stone, which they say, the Angel that is to examine him sits on; and they bid the Dead Person answer him stoutly, and not be afraid. They burn Incense about the Graves, as they say, to scare away the Evil Spirits, and Pray to God to be merciful to the Party; and according to his Quality, he has a Turban placed at the Head of the Grave, or Tomb, by which he is distinguished, as to his Rank.

As for the *Turks* in general, they are well proportioned, strong in Body; and the Women are mostly Handsom,

Handsom, their Complexion Fair, because they seldom stir abroad, unless the Vulgar Sort. The Habit of Men and Women is very neat and commendable, keeping still in one Fashion. They are People of a Jolley temper, and much rely on Fatallity, every one concluding there is a set time for all Accidents, and none believe they shall die before the appointed Hour, which in War makes them run upon desperate attempts, for they are verily perswaded, they may as well die in their Beds as in the Field at the same time; and if it is so decreed, their Fate is irresistable. They are in Passive Obedience to their Prince, and submit to his Decrees, without reasoning the Justice or Injustice of them; they play at divers Games, but never for Money, to avoid Quarrelling; and Deuelling is a thing not known amongst them. However they are very Proud, and esteem all others inferiour to them, thinking themselves the Valianteſt and Wiseſt Men on Earth; a conceited Vanity too much indulged amongst Christians; they are exceeding Superstitious, and their Ignorance is the Mother of their Devotion, for their Priests labour to keep them so, that they may not discern Truth from Fables.

As to Weight and Measure they are very Just, for one may send a Child to the Market, and they dare not in the least defraud it; for there are Persons who overlook those places, and if they discover a defraud, the Person who does it is Bastinado'd, and perhaps, unless he Compounds, severely fined; and although, as in all Nations, there are some Irregularities committed, yet here a great Caution is used to prevent it, though sometimes Broils happen in the Streets, when the *Turks* get Drunk, and Blood is shed.

After all this, they account *Christians* no better than Dogs, and as often, almost, as they see them in the Streets, put more or less Affront upon them, except such as are protected by Janisaries, or other Authority; they swear by their Beards, the Head of their Ancestors, and that of the Grand Signior, which

which they seldom break; for though none within the *Seraglio* but the Grand Signior, and the *Bostangi* Bassa, are allowed to ware their Beards, those without are not limitted.

CHAP. V.

Their Pilgrimages to Mecha *and* Medina; *the Birth, and Burial-places of* Mahomet *their Prophet; what they Observe; and a description of the House, Tomb, and what else is Curious and Admirable in this Undertaking.*

THE *Turks* are very Devout and Punctual in their Pilgrimages to *Mecha* in *Arabia*, to visit *Mahomet*'s Tomb, and every Year there goes a great Caravan from *Constantinople*, as well as from divers other places, which I shall mention at the conclusion of this Chapter, and they so time it, that they may be there at the time of their Carnaval. The Grand Signior sends Rich presents, as Velvet embroidered with Gold, and *Arabian* Characters in Gold and Silver, Pearl and Rich Stones, for Canopies, Carpets, Coverings for the Doors, *&c.* but these usually are sent from *Cair* in *Ægypt*, because it is much nearer to *Mecha* than *Constantinople*; and when the Holy Cammel, as they term it, who carries these Rich Ornaments passes by, there is great crouding to touch the Burthen, and those that do it, kiss their Fingers, and think themselves Blessed.

This Caravan amounts most times, to between 10 and 20000, and sometimes a far greater number. I shall not trouble the Reader with a Journal of the way, because I Travelled it not; however, it must be

be very tedious, becauſe it is Long, and over Deſarts, and rugged Mountains, which makes them take great ſtore of Proviſions with them, and Veſſels to recruit them with Freſh Water, which in the Hot Countries they paſs, is rarely to be found; they moſtly Encamp in the Fields and Deſarts, being always conſtrained to ſet Watches, leaſt Robbers ſhould break in on the out skirts of their Camp, to kill and plunder, before the Alarum can be taken; nay, the wild Beaſts near Forreſts aſſault them, and kill Men and Cattle, eſpecially ſuch as ſtraggle too far from the main Body; but for the hardſhips they endure, ſome Priviledges are allowed them, for whatever Crimes they commit lower than Treaſon, if they eſcape, and make this Pilgrimage, upon their returns they are abſolved, and accounted as Honeſt as if they had never Offended. They have a Guard of Janiſaries, with many others who go Armed, and their number gathers by the way, like a Snow-ball rowled from a ſteep Mountain; they appear all the way very devout, the number conſiſting of Men, Women, and Children; ſome indeed, take the advantage of Trade and Commerce, carrying ſtore of rich Wares with them; all the way, thoſe in Pilgrimage Sing Verſes of their *Alcoran*, and beſtow Charity according as they are able.

When they come within two days Journey of *Mecha*, they ſtrip themſelves, only leaving their Privities covered with a Napkin, for it is a Capital Offence, either in Man or Woman, to let them be ſeen, and another Napkin about their Necks, alledging this kind of Franſey, to be out of reſpect to the place where their Prophet had ſo often Travelled; on their Feet they wear Scandals, ſaying, *The Ground is Holy, and we will not defile it with our naked Feet*: And in this State they continue 8 Days, during which term, it is not lawful to be Shaved, to Buy or Sell, kill any thing, or be angry with their Servants, nor ſpeak any thing that is unſeemly; and if any one Treſpaſſes, he is to attone by Alms;

Alms; those that are Sick are dispensed from Striping, but they must in lieu of it give Alms.

When they come to *Mecha*, they stay there three Days, during which time they visit the several places of Devotion. This *Mecha* is an Ancient Town Scituate among the Mountains, built all of Stone and Mortar; and here they hold *Mahomet* was Born, prohibiting all but Mussulmen to enter it on pain of Death. In the middle of it is the Kiaabe, or Square House; it is surrounded with a Wall to hinder approach; they go round it several times in Devotion, saying certain Prayers, an Imum, or Priest, goes before them, and what Antick Trick or Gestures soever he shews, they imitate him; first they walk softly and Mutter their Prayers, then, at certain Intervals, they Run and Skip, shruging and turning their Shoulders many ways; then they fall into a soft pace again, and so continue it by turns, till they have ended their Prayers. This House is covered with a Dome, and it has a Well of good Water, considering what other places afford about the City, they being mostly Brackish or Bitter; near to the Door, upon the entrance of this House or Temple, is a black Stone, as big as a Pumpion: This the *Turks* say, came down from Heaven, and was then White, but Man's Sins polluted it, and made it turn Black; and he that can first kiss it, when they have given one another the *Selam*, after the Prayer of *Kouschiouk*, on Friday, which falls within three Days that they sojourn there, is held a Saint, and every one strives to kiss his Feet; but this same proves Fatal to the Party, who is smoothered in the Croud. This House is never entered but four times a Year, and one of them is at the Ramadan, to wash it with Rose-Water, unless any one will give 100 Chequins of Gold for admittance. It is covered all round on the out-side with Stuffs sent by the Grand Signior, in whose Dominions it is, and other *Mahometan* Princes; and every Year the rich Covering is renewed; the old being cut out into Relicks, and sold by the Sultan *Scherif*, who Commands,

be very tedious, becauſe it is Long, and over Deſarts, and rugged Mountains, which makes them take great ſtore of Proviſions with them, and Veſſels to recruit them with Freſh Water, which in the Hot Countries they paſs, is rarely to be found; they moſtly Encamp in the Fields and Deſarts, being always conſtrained to ſet Watches, leaſt Robbers ſhould break in on the out skirts of their Camp, to kill and plunder, before the Alarum can be taken; nay, the wild Beaſts near Forreſts aſſault them, and kill Men and Cattle [illegible]

[illegible]

IRREGULAR PA

[illegible]

ſeen, an [illegible] Neck, alledging this kind of Franſey, to be out of reſpect to the place where their Prophet had ſo often Travelled; on their Feet they wear Scandals, ſaying, *The Ground is Holy, and we will not defile it with our naked Feet*: And in this State they continue 8 Days, during which term, it is not lawful to be Shaved, to Buy or Sell, kill any thing, or be angry with their Servants, nor ſpeak any thing that is unſeemly; and if any one Treſpaſſes, he is to attone by Alms;

Alms; those that are Sick are dispensed from Striping, but they must in lieu of it give Alms.

When they come to *Mecha*, they stay there three Days, during which time they visit the several places of Devotion. This *Mecha* is an Ancient Town Scituate among the Mountains, built all of Stone and Mortar; and here they hold *Mahomet* was Born, prohibiting all but Musselmen to enter it on pain of Death. In the middle of it is the Kiaabe, [illegible] is surrounded with a Wall to

[illegible]eral times in
[illegible]um, or Priest,
[illegible]rick or Ge-
[illegible]m; first they
[illegible]then, at cer-
[illegible]shruging and
[illegible]then they fall
[illegible]it by turns,
[illegible]his House is
[illegible]Vell of good
[illegible]afford about
[illegible]r Bitter; near
[illegible]his House or
[illegible]a Pumpion:
[illegible]Heaven, and
[illegible]luted it, and
[illegible]n first kiss it,
[illegible]e *Selam*, after
[illegible], which falls

[illegible]three Days that they [illegible]here, is held a Saint, and every one strives to kiss his Feet; but this same proves Fatal to the Party, who is smoothered in the Croud. This House is never entered but four times a Year, and one of them is at the Ramadan, to wash it with Rose-Water, unless any one will give 100 Chequins of Gold for admittance. It is covered all round on the out-side with Stuffs sent by the Grand Signior, in whose Dominions it is, and other *Mahometan* Princes; and every Year the rich Covering is renewed; the old being cut out into Relicks, and sold by the Sultan *Scherif*, who Commands,

PAGINATION

be very tedious, becauſe it is Long, and over Deſarts, and rugged Mountains, which makes them take great ſtore of Proviſions with them, and Veſſels to recruit them with Freſh Water, which in the Hot Countries they paſs, is rarely to be found; they moſtly Encamp in the Fields and Deſarts, being always conſtrained to ſet Watches, leaſt Robbers ſhould break in on the out skirts of their Camp, to kill and plunder, before the Alarum can be taken; nay, the wild Beaſts near Forreſts aſſault them, and kill Men and Cattle, eſpecially ſuch as ſtraggle too far from the main Body; but for the hardſhips they endure, ſome Priviledges are allowed them, for whatever Crimes they commit lower than Treaſon, if they eſcape, and make this Pilgrimage, upon their return they are abſolved, and accounted as Honeſt as if they had never Offended. They have a Guard of Janiſaries, with many others who go Armed, and their number gathers by the way, like a Snow-ball rowled from a ſteep Mountain; they appear all the way very devout, the number conſiſting of Men, Women, and Children; ſome indeed, take the advantage of Trade and Commerce, carrying ſtore of rich Wares with them; all the way, thoſe in Pilgrimage Sing Verſes of their *Alcoran*, and beſtow Charity according as they are able.

When they come within two days Journey of *Mecha*, they ſtrip themſelves, only leaving their Privities covered with a Napkin, for it is a Capital Offence, either in Man or Woman, to let them be ſeen, and another Napkin about their Necks, alledging this kind of Franſey, to be out of reſpect to the place where their Prophet had ſo often Travelled; on their Feet they wear Scandals, ſaying, *The Ground is Holy, and we will not defile it with our naked Feet*: And in this State they continue 8 Days, during which term, it is not lawful to be Shaved, to Buy or Sell, kill any thing, or be angry with their Servants, nor ſpeak any thing that is unſeemly; and if any one Treſpaſſes, he is to attone by Alms;

Alms; those that are Sick are dispensed from Striping, but they must in lieu of it give Alms.

When they come to *Mecha*, they stay there three Days, during which time they visit the several places of Devotion. This *Mecha* is an Ancient Town Scituate among the Mountains, built all of Stone and Mortar; and here they hold *Mahomet* was Born, prohibiting all but Musselmen to enter it on pain of Death. In the middle of it is the Kiaabe, or Square House; it is surrounded with a Wall to hinder approach; they go round it several times in Devotion, saying certain Prayers, an Imum, or Priest, goes before them, and what Antick Trick or Gestures soever he shews, they imitate him; first they walk softly and Mutter their Prayers, then, at certain Intervals, they Run and Skip, shruging and turning their Shoulders many ways; then they fall into a soft pace again, and so continue it by turns, till they have ended their Prayers. This House is covered with a Dome, and it has a Well of good Water, considering what other places afford about the City, they being mostly Brackish or Bitter; near to the Door, upon the entrance of this House or Temple, is a black Stone, as big as a Pumpion: This the *Turks* say, came down from Heaven, and was then White, but Man's Sins polluted it, and made it turn Black; and he that can first kiss it, when they have given one another the *Selam*, after the Prayer of *Kouschlouk*, on Friday, which falls within three Days that they sojourn there, is held a Saint, and every one strives to kiss his Feet; but this same proves Fatal to the Party, who is smoothered in the Croud. This House is never entered but four times a Year, and one of them is at the Ramadan, to wash it with Rose-Water, unless any one will give 100 Chequins of Gold for admittance. It is covered all round on the out-side with Stuffs sent by the Grand Signior, in whose Dominions it is, and other *Mahometan* Princes; and every Year the rich Covering is renewed; the old being cut out into Relicks, and sold by the Sultan *Scherif*, who Commands,

Commands, to Pilgrims, at a good Rate, unleſs the *Little Bairam*, or *Eaſter* Sacrifice falls on a *Friday*, and then the Grand Signior has it, to ſend in pieces to the New Moſques, which being hung up there, ſerves inſtead of their Conſecration.

When the Pilgrims have finiſhed their three days at *Mecha*, they go to *Minnet*, where they are to arrive the Vigil of the *Little Bairam*, and on the day of *Bairam*, they Sacrifice Sheep, every one according to Ability, diſtributing part to the Poor; then they ſhave themſelves, and put on their Clothes to viſit Mount *Arafat*, and there they ſtay 3 days more; the firſt Day after they have ſaid Prayers, they go to the Foot of the Hill, throw 7 Stones againſt the Mount, and ſtay there, the next Day they throw 14, and the Third 21: They ſay they throw theſe Stones, to break the Devil's Head, who in that place tempted *Abrahain*, when he was going to Sacrifice his Son *Iſhmael*, for they will not allow it to be *Iſaac*. Here they ſay, *Adam* and *Eve* ſought one another for the ſpace of 220 Years, after they were driven out of *Paradiſe*, the one going up the Mountain on one ſide, whilſt the other went up on the other ſide, and ſo made it a Fruitleſs ſearch, but at the end of this time met juſt on the top of it. Here the Sultan *Scherif* ſays ſome Prayers, and gives them his Benediction, and ſo this Work is concluded. He has abundance of ways, under the Umbrage of Devotion, to ſqueeze Money out of them, and is vaſtly Rich.

After this the Pilgrims go to *Medina*, to viſit *Mahomet*'s Tomb, which according to Authentick Relations, does not hang in the Air by Virtue of Loadſtones: It ſtands as other Tombs, and is indeed encompaſſed with Iron Grates, upon a ſuſpition they once had, that 2 Chriſtians, Habited like Deviſes, intended to ſteal it away, and for that purpoſe had dug under it, to get the Body. *Medina* is 3 Days Journey from the *Red Sea*, its Port is called *Jambo*. This and *Mecha* are but indifferent Towns, though of ſuch great Reſort. About the middle of

Medina

Medina is a Mosque, and in a Corner of it stands *Mahomet*'s Tomb, covered as the Monuments of the *Turkish* Emperors at *Constantinople*. The Sepulchre is in a little round Building, or Tower, covered with a Dome, which the *Turks* call *Turbe*. The Building is quite open to the middle; up to the Dome, and all round there is a little Gallery, of which the out-side Wall has several Windows with Silver Grates to them, and the inside Wall of the little Tower adorned with a great number of precious Stones, being the place that answers to the Head of the Tomb; and this certainly is exceeding Rich, by the Gifts of many Princes, and others, as Diamonds, Gold, Rubies, Saphires, and other sorts of Jewels, that might, for their Value, purchase a petty Kingdom; and lower down, there is a half Moon of Gold of a vast Value, by reason of the precious Stones which enchase it.

The Turbe, wherein the Tomb is, is hung round with Hangings of Red and White Silk, like Damask, unless where the Jewels are, and there they are turned aside, that their Lustre may appear, and round the Hangings are Words in Characters of Gold, expressing the Names of GOD, and *Mahomet*, *&c.* The Door, by which one enters into the Gallery, is Silver, and so is that which goes out of the Gallery into the Turbe. The Pilgrims visit some other places hereabouts, but of no great Note, yet one thing more is confirmed on all Hands, to be very remarkable in those dry Countries, *viz.* The next Night after the Pilgrims are gone, so much Rain falls, that it seems like a Deluge, for a time, and much Fertelizes the Plains, washing away all the Blood and Filth of the Sacrifices, and this falls always the Third Night after the Sacrifice at their *Little Beiram*, or *Easter*, though this tide generally changes the Day, as with us our *Easter* does; and this they look upon as a Miracle, to confirm their Oblations are accepted; and indeed the wisest of Men may be puzzeled, to know, whether so exact a falling of Rain, in a Country, parched and dry,

for

for the moſt part, proceeds from a Natural, or Supernatural Cauſe.

Many times 100000 People meet at *Mecha* together, encamping on the Plains; as for their going to *Medina*, ſome refuſe it, becauſe they are not bound by their Law, to viſit *Mahomet*'s Tomb, but at Pleaſure, and then they muſt ſay a Prayer for his Soul. The other Caravans come from *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Perſia*, *India*, and *Barbery*; ſo that the Concourſe, according to the Relation I had, is exceeding great.

CHAP. VI.

Travels and Voyages to Alexandria *in* Ægypt; *with many things remarkable in the way*, &c.

THUS having taken a view of *Conſtantinople*, with the places about it; the Religion, Manners, Cuſtoms, &c. of the *Turks*, I could not, however, reſt ſatisfied, my curioſity now abroad, leading me on to viſit remoter Countries; wherefore, I ſet forward for *Burſa*, the Ancient *Pruſea*, formerly the Capital City of the Turkiſh Empire, taken from the *Caramanian* King, by *Orcham*, or *Ureham*, Son of *Othoman*, in his Father's Life time. It was likewiſe the Ancient Seat of the Kings of *Bythinia*. In order to this, I went on Board at *Tophana*, and was tranſported to *Montagua*, but making no ſtay in ſuch an inconſiderable place, I took Horſe, and rid to *Burſa*, 13 Miles from it; this City is not above 10 Miles diſtant from Mount *Olimpus*: It is pleaſantly Scituated, and well Watered by Aquaducts; it conſiſts of many fair Buildings, and they reckon about 200 fine Moſques. There, in little Chapels covered with Domes, lie Buried the firſt *Turkiſh* Sultans,

Sultans, and *French* Sultana, in great State. The City is about half a French League in length, but not Walled in all parts; and upon a little Hill in the middle of it, is a little Castle, found to be built by a Maiden Princess, who was cured of a Leprosie by the Hot Waters; for as a wonder in Nature, there runs a Rivulet of Hot Water, almost scalding those that step into it at first; and there one sees the Tomb of *Roland*, or *Orland*, a very Valiant Man, who defended the City against all Assaults his Sword, Mace, and other warlike Habiliaments hang by it; but this Tomb stands on a Hill, in a little Chapel, where usually a Turkish Hermit Lives.

From this place I set forward to *Smyrna*, and arrived there by several Stages, finding nothing in the way memorable. *Smyrna* is about 8 days Journey of a Caravan from *Bursa*; It is a noted Town of *Jonia*; they say it was first Founded by *Tantulus*, and since called *Smyrna*, by an Amazon of that Name, who Conquered it; it has been subject to Earthquakes, and felt the dire effects of them, by being reduced to a heap of Rubbish; and after that built by *Mark Anthony*, nearer to the Sea than at first it stood; the People boast that *Homer* was Born there; the *Turks* at present call it *Ismyr*. This City, Anciently one of the Seven Churches of *Asia*, to whom St. *John* was commanded to Write, is very well Peopled, and Defended by a Castle, but it is not strong; there is a huge Cistern cut out of a Rock, and the Amphitheatre, where St. *Policarp* suffered Martyrdom. There is another Castle nearer the Sea, and on the Gate, the Arms of the Church of *Rome*, supposed to be erected by the *Genoese*, who once were Masters of the City, and all the Coast. This Castle shuts the Port, which is but little, so that the Stranger Trading Ships ride at Anchor abroad, in the Road, which is good and spacious. There is another Castle at the Mouth of the Road, commanding the Ships that enter, and go out, for the Custom here is very considerable to the Grand

Signior, moſt *European* Traders having Conſuls there. The Country about it is Spacious, Pleaſant, and Fruitful; Oyl, and a pleaſant ſort of Wine, called *Smyrna* Wine, in abundance. The Air is Temperate, for in the Heat of Summer the Northern Breezes blow, and cool all the Region about it.

After I had tarried here 8 Days, I found a Veſſel bound for *Alexandria* in *Ægypt*: I had read much of that anciently Famed Country, which enticed me to lay hold on the opportunity of being an Eye-Witneſs, of what had been almoſt every where ſpoke of it, ſo embarked with my Baggage, and in two Days came to an Anchor in the Port, or Road of *Chio*, a very fine Iſland, moſtly inhabited by *Greeks*: There grows abundance of Maſtick Trees, which yield the Owners great advantage; they grow crooked, like a Vine, and being cut, the Gum, called Maſtick, at a certain Seaſon, flows from them, and is the beſt that is to be found. The Chriſtians, both *Greeks* and *Latins*, have their free Liberty to exerciſe their Religion, ſo that there are a great many Religious Houſes, and they enjoy greater Priviledges, than any within the Turkiſh Dominions, for here they have Bells in ſome Monaſteries, and elſewhere they are not allowed, particularly at *Niamoni*. The Villages ſtand here very thick, and the Inhabitants are numerous; but the Ship coming to Anchor here, only by reaſon of bad Weather, I had time to take but a ſlight View e'er I Sailed again; and paſſing many other Iſlands, as *Samas*, *Nicaria*, *&c.* in the former of theſe, in the Night, I ſaw a light near the Sea, riſing and falling, as big as a large Candle, which the Patron of the Veſſel, who was a *Greek*, told me, always appeared in the Ruins of a Chriſtian Church, but as any Man approached it, it vaniſhed, or removed further from them, which made me conclude, it was an *Ignis fatuis*, riſing from the Unctuous Vapours, and kindled by Agitation. Theſe Iſlands are now Poor, and of no great Note, though Anciently very

ry

ry Famous. I shall pass over others that appeared on Star, and Larboard, and sometimes a Head of us; we Sailed near some in great danger, by reason of the bad Weather, and Rocks that jutted out in the shallowness of the Sea near them, the Winds shifting, and the Waves running high; but after all, at Sun rising, a gentle Gale blowing from the South, we spread our Sails, and cleared our Vessel of a dangerous Streight, between some Rocks and Islands, that we were fallen in with; and about Evening, shifting to the North West, we stood away South and by East, so that next Morning we made the Island of *Rhodes*, and about Noon came to an Anchor in a good Harbour, to recruit our selves with Provisions, for the Storms we met with spoiled most we brought with us, the Waves frequently rowling over the wast of our small Vessel, during that Violence, so that a great deal of Water enter'd her, and all Hands were at the Pump Night and Day.

This noted Island has *Lycia* to the North, a Sea 20 Miles over, separating them. To the East, *Cyprus*; to the West, *Candie*; and to the South, *Ægypt*; it lies in a temperate Climate, and is in Circuit about 100 Miles; few Clouds are ever seen over it; it is very Fruitful, and the *Turks* strugled long before they could be entire Masters of it, which happened in the Reign of *Solyman the Magnificent*; for the City that gave the Name to this Island, was then taken, at the Expence of 150000 *Turks*, from the great Master, and Renowned Knights, Hospitallers, who Immortallized their Fame, in defending it to the last extremity. This City has two commodious Harbours, did not the great one lie so open to the East, and North-East Winds, that sometimes drive Ships from their Anchors, The *Turks* have built a strong new Tower in the place of the old one, to command the Entrance, and Centinels are placed in Turrets, to give Notice of the approach of Ships. It has a Bastion and Curtain, that reaches to the Town, so that it makes one side of the Port,

and there is an Old Caſtle over-againſt it: Over this Port formerly ſtood a Huge Colloſſus of Braſs, one of the Wonders of the World, for it ſtood ſtradling 50 Fathom, one Foot from another, and 70 Cubits high, ſo that Ships under Sail paſſed under it; it repreſented the Sun, and was caſt by *Chares* the *Lydian*: In one Hand it held a Light-Houſe, to direct Ships in, in dark Nights; but it was thrown down by an Earthquake, and being broken by the Saraſens, when they Conquered *Rhodes*; they ſold it to a Jew, who loaded 900 Camels with the Metal for *Alexandria*, and now the Tower and Caſtle I mentioned, are built where the Feet of it ſtood. There are many Ancient Monuments remaining in this City; as the Statue of St. *Paul*, and divers others of Note. The Eſcutcheons of Chriſtian Princes, and the Knights of the Order of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*. The Building is Regular, and the Streets pretty Fair. But now the Wind ſerving, I was conſtrained to end my Obſervation here, and return on Board; we ſet Sail with a North-weſt Wind, and ſoon left *Lindo* a-ſtern, being a little Rock at the point of the Iſland of *Rhodes*, 20 Leagues from the City, and on it there is a ſmall Town, with a very good Fort. The next that appeared was *Scarpanto*, 17 Leagues diſtant from *Lindo*, leaving it to the Starboard, we enter'd the Gulf of *Satalia*, where, for a conſiderable time Sailing, we had a Rowling Sea, the Current there ſetting with Eddies, and it is many times dangerous paſſing, for Ships are often caſt away there; and here we were encompaſſed with many flaſhes of Lightning, that glancing on the Waters, made the Sea ſeem as on Fire, looking very terrible; and I plainly perceived the Maſter of the Ship was at a loſs to ſtand in with the Coaſt, ſo that it growing ſomewhat Calm, we made little way that Night.

The Morning proving Fair, the Man ſent up to diſcover, could, however, ſee no Land, but the whiteiſhneſs of the Water made the Sailors conclude, we muſt be near the Land of *Ægypt*, which

is

is the only Mark at a great diſtance, that can be obſerved, the Land lying ſo low, that it is not made till a Ship is in a manner upon it.

This whiteneſs is occaſioned by the River *Nile*, that carries it a great way into the Sea, and at this diſtance from the Coaſt, we had many Flurreys, accompanied with great Showers of Rain, but they were in a little time over, and the Wind coming about North-weſt, we tacked, and ſent up again to diſcover, but no Land appearing, we kept ſailing South and South-weſt; but fearing to loſe the Windward of *Alexandria*, we ſtood Eaſt and by South, but finding that a miſtake, we tacked about that we might get nearer to the Land, from which we knew we could not be far diſtant, and held on the ſame Courſe, till we found our ſelves obliged to Tack, and bear away South-weſt; here we ſaw the Moon riſe Eccliplſed, half an hour after Sun-ſet, which was not viſible in *England*, *Holland*, *France*, *&c.* becauſe there, according to the Almanacks, the Ecclips, was to happen at 3 in the Afternoon, Feb. 11. and the next Day we percieved the Sea very white about us, and the Man that looked out cryed Land; ſome thought it to be *Damiette*, and others *Bouquer*; but in the mean time, that we might not Sail to Leeward, we continued our Courſe South-weſt, and in a few Hours we Tacked and ſtood North-eaſt; and about a quarter of an hour after the Wind turning North-weſt, we bore away South and South-weſt, and in concluſion we made the *Bouquer*, and a little after the *Farillon*, or Light-Houſe of *Alexandria*, and at 3 of the Clock in the Afternoon the ſame day, we entered the Haven by the South. One thing I found remarkable in approaching Land, from *Damiette* to *Roſſetto*, between the two Branches of the *Nile*, that from 40 Fathom Water, it leſſens every Mile till you come to Land. *Aegypt* is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Red Sea*, on the South with *Aſia*, on the Weſt with *Cyrene*, and on the North with the *Mediterranean Sea*.

CHAP. VII.

The Author's Arrival at Alexandria, *and what is observable there; and his passing from thence to* Caire.

BEING now at Land, and recovered from my Sea fatigue, by suitable Refreshments, my curiosity lead me to take a view of this once so Renowned City, Founded by *Alexander* the Great, when, after his *Persian* Expedition, he brought *Ægypt* under his Subjection, though it is not comparable to what it has been in its flourishing time, as may appear by the Ruins about it, and within its Circumference, and the Venerable remains of Antiquity.

This Town is called by the *Turks*, who possess all *Ægypt*, *Skenderia*. There are in it several Fondicks, or large Houses, where the *English*, *French*, *Dutch*, and other *Europeans*, have their appointed Residence, paying no House Rent, but on the contrary, the Consuls receive Money of the Grand Signior Annually to keep them in suitable Repair, they being every Evening shut up, and the Keys carried to the Aga of the Castle, who sends them back every Morning; they are likewise shut up, as is the Water-gate, every *Friday*, during Noon Prayer; and this arises from an old Propheſie, that the *Franks*, for so they call all Christian *Europeans*, shall become Masters of that place, during Noon Prayer, on a *Friday*.

Scarce any thing of the Ancient Town remains unruinated but the Walls, and some Buildings towards the French Fondick, which are almost ruined; it being easie to distinguish the Ancient from the Later Buildings, for the latter are low, and ill-contrived.

This

This once Famous Town has three Ports, one called the Old Harbour; it is pretty large, but the entrance difficult, ſo that but few Veſſels put in there; the other two are ſeparated by a little Iſland, and higher up, the Iſland was anciently called *Pharos*, and is joyned to the main Land by a Stone Bridge, and in the middle of it is a ſquare Tower, where the Powder is kept, and at the end, another Caſtle, called *Farillon*, ſtanding where the Ancient Watch-Tower of *Pharos* ſtood, which was accounted one of the Seven Wonders of the World. The firſt of theſe Ports is a Harbour for the Galleys, and is on one ſide defended by the *Farillon*, and on the other by a ſlighter Caſtle; but theſe Ports are encumbered with Stones and Rocks, requiring a skilful Pilot to guide in Veſſels of any conſiderable Burthen. The Cuſtom-houſe here is Farmed by a *Turk*, and has a *Jew* for his Deputy, and indeed the Receipt of Cuſtom moſtly paſſes through the *Jew*'s Hands, who can pleaſure, or diſpleaſure many that Trade there: There is alſo an Old Cuſtom houſe, but of little Note.

In *Alexandria* there is a Mount made of Ancient Ruins, on which ſtands a ſquare Tower, and a Sentinel, who puts out a Flag ſo ſoon as he deſcrys a Sail, and every Veſſel coming into the Port pays him ſomething. All Officers here depend on the Baſſa of *Ægypt*, who places and diſplaces them at his pleaſure.

The Walls of this Town have Fals, Brays, and are flanked with great ſquare Towers, about 200 Paces diſtant one from another, and a little Tower between every two of them; in each of the great Tower there is a large ſquare Hall, the Vault of it ſupported by Pillars of *Thebaick* Stone, and a great many Chambers above, and over theſe a large Platform, of 30 Foot Square, and each of theſe anciently were able to maintain 200 Men; the Walls are very thick, and every where Port-holes in them; theſe Caſtles have Ciſterns, repleniſhed with Water, but moſt part of thoſe that encompaſſed the

ancient *Alexandria*, as it was in its former Extent and Luſtre, are ruined by the length of Time, and neglect of Repair; but if the *Turkiſh* Officers catch an *European* Chriſtian in theſe Towers, they preſently charge him as a Spy, come to view the ſtrength of the Town, and then nothing but Money will releaſe him from Puniſhment.

Near this Town is the famous Pillar of *Pompey*, ſo much celebrated by Hiſtorians; it ſtands about 200 Paces diſtant, upon a little riſing, placed on a ſquare Pedeſtal, about 7 or 8 Foot high, that reſting on a ſquare Baſis, about 20 Foot broad, and 2 Foot high, made up of ſeveral large Stones; the Body of the Pillar is an entire piece of Garnet, about 6 Fathom in Compaſs, having on the Top a very curious Capital; and it muſt create Admiration, by what ſtrong Engines ſo vaſt a Stone could be brought thither, which makes ſome believe it was caſt, and made of a certain Cement on the place, which Art was uſual with the Ancients, though now, for any thing that appears, it is loſt.

In this place appears the remains of *Cæſar*'s Pallace, but all that can be called entire of it, are ſome Porphery Pillars, and a Frontiſpiece, which looks very curious. There is a *Kibalis*, or *Canal*, cut from the *Nile*, which brings Water to this place, and is the only good Water they have; this fills their Ciſterns that are Magnificently made, and placed under in Vaults, the whole Town being hollow underneath, and ſupported by fair Marble Pillars, and ſome ſay, there are fair Streets under Ground, wherein there are Shops to be ſeen ſtill; but the *Turks*, for ſome Reaſons, will not diſcover them, nor ſuffer any to go down in the Vaults that lead to them. All along, the Gardens border on the *Kabalis*, planted with Lemon, Orange, and other curious Trees, as Caſſa, and Corab Trees, and the like.

Here ſtands St. *Catharine*'s Church, kept by the *Greeks*, where they ſhow a hollow Pillar, on which they ſay her Head was cut off, and would make

Travel-

Travellers believe, that the Blood and Fat it is ſmeered with, remained ever ſince her Decolation. There is a pretty neat Church built to St. *Mark*, where he received his Martyrdome, and the Picture of St. *Michael*, ſaid to be drawn by St. *Luke*; there are to be ſeen in ſome ruinous places, Pillars of Porphyrian Marble, and Obelisks of Garnet, with Hierogliphicks upon them, yet but one of them ſtanding on a Pedeſtal.

Many other things are here to be ſeen, but not to be tedious, I ſhall omit the deſcribing of all the Statues and Figures moſtly encumbered with Ruins, which are very numerous, and rather demonſtrate the former Magnificence of the place, than what it now is; and having ſetled my Affairs here, I hired a Janiſary for my greater ſecurity to paſs on with me to *Caire*, the Principal place of *Ægypt*; but before I went thither, I viſited *Roſſetto*, about 60 miles from *Alexandria*, there being but one place to bait at by the way, called *Maudie*, or the Paſſage, becauſe you Ferry over a Lock there, full of Fiſh, though there is a Caſtle nearer called *Bouquier*, to defend the Road, the reſt, or the greateſt part, being Deſart Sands; on the other ſide of the Water is a Kervanſerai, or Inn, where you may be welcome to Eat and Drink ſuch as you bring with you for nothing; moſt part of this Journey you Travel along the Sea-ſide: You may ſee where the *Nile* diſcharges it ſelf into the Sea, which is a very dangerous Paſſage, there being Saiques and Barks uſually caſt away in venturing, eſpecially when the Sea is rough, for then it occaſions an Eddy in the Water of the River, which turning the Veſſels round caſts them on Shoar. *Roſſetto* is the ancient *Canopus*, lying in a Branch of the *Nile*, falling into the Sea five Miles below the Town; and this is accounted the neateſt Town in *Ægypt* for its Piazza's and Hans, being a Town of good Trade, encompaſſed by five Gardens, the Houſes high and well built, Proviſions plenty, and at a very cheap Rate. From hence taking Water on the *Nile*, I paſſed with many

many others to *Boulac*, a Port of *Caire*. This is a long narrow Town, built on the ſide of the *Nile*, and has about it many pleaſant Gardens and Country Houſes; and here by Cuſtom, you muſt, being a *Frank*, pay at your firſt coming to *Caire* a Piaſtre, which is received by *Jews*, Authorized for that purpoſe. At this place we hired Aſſes to go to *Caire*, which the *Moors* kept ready ſadled, on purpoſe to wait for Travellers, and accommodate them, and you have the Aſs, and the Maſter's Attendance for a ſmall Charge; the latter running after and driving the Aſs on, and crying, *look to it*, which the Aſs hearing, is very cautious of ſtumbling.

CHAP. VIII.

A View of Caire, *and what is Remarkable in it*, &c.

CAIRE is the Capital City of *Ægypt*, and with it runs the fortune of the whole Country; when it was wreſted from the *Mamalukes* by Sultan *Selim*, Emperor of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1571, who cauſed *Thomambey*, the *Mamaluke* Sultan, to be hanged on a Hook, under one of the Gates, and exterminating the whole Race of thoſe Men; ſetled the *Turkiſh* Government under a Baſſa, as his Viceroy. This City is Scituate at the Foot of a Hill, on which a Caſtle is built to Command it, which renders it unhealthful, inſomuch, that the Peſtilence often rages there, and ſweeps away a multitude of People, for the Wind intercepts the free paſſage of the Wind and Air, and occaſions a ſtifling Heat; and the good Water they have is brought on Camels Backs from *Boulac* in *Bourachios*, which is half a League from the City, and this Water is ſold very dear.

This

This City is exceeding large, and full of People, being in the form of a Creſcent, yet is narrow, and may be compaſſed in two Hours and a quarters Walking: It is ſurrounded with many ſtateley Pallaces of the Beys, and other great Men of the Country; the Houſes are little, but full of People, ſo that when the Plague ſweeps away 200000, it is hardly perceived, eſpecially in a little time after. The Walls have handſom Battlements and Towers, at leſs than 100 Paces interval, able to hold many Soldiers; they appear to have been very Stately, but at preſent moſtly ruinous. The Caſtle likewiſe is much decayed, the *Turks* being Supine, make little account of repairing them; near the Walls are large Church Yards, full of Sepulchers, adorned with fair Stone, that gives a pleaſant Proſpect, and all agree, that in this City there are 23000 Precincts, and as many Moſques, there being one in a Precinct at leaſt. A Precinct is a ſet part, and in ſome of them there are ſeveral Streets; and each Precinct is watched by two Men Chained together, to prevent them from ſeparating, and they demand certain dues of the Inhabitaints and Strangers; the Sons-Baſſa keeps the Keys of the Padlocks that lock up their Chains. The Streets here are ſhort and narrow, except the Street of *Bazar* and the *Khalis*, which is dry but 3 Months in the Year, and few People frequent it; the reſt are little, turning and winding, which makes me believe the Houſes were firſt built without any deſign of compacting them into a City, every one placing his Houſe on the ground he liked beſt to build on, without conſidering whether they ſtopped the Street or not. Some Moſques are very Magnificent, with curious Frontiſpieces and Gates, with very high Minarets; but the greateſt part are little and inconſiderable; The faireſt is called *Degemiel Azem*. The Houſes are high, with flat Taraſs-Roofs, where they take the freſh Air when the Sun is down, and lie on Carpets there in the heat of Summer.

On

On the out-ſide the Houſes make little ſhow, but within, they are Richly adorned with Gold and Azure, eſpecially thoſe of Quality, and their Halls have an open round hole in the Roofs, to let in the cool Breathings of the Air, and commonly there is a Cupulo, or Lanthorn, over the hole, to keep out bluſtering Winds.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Piramids of Ægypt, *and other Buildings and memorable Antiquities; of the* Catacombs, *where the* Munices *are. The River* Nile, *and the Creatures found therein,* &c,

HAving taken a view of *Caire*, I was deſirous to ſee thoſe Wonders of the World ſo much every where diſcourſed of, *viz.* The Piramids of *Ægypt*. Theſe are ſeated on a Sandy Plain; two of them are ſhut, but the third, which is biggeſt is open, and ſeated very near the other, two or three Leagues from New *Caire*. This is a vaſt Artificial Monument, built moſtly of Stones of a Prodigious bigneſs, though they differ in that, for in Reaſon, we cannot ſuppoſe, that ſo many Stones of an equal bigneſs ſhould be found for the ſupplying ſo ſtupendious a Work; yet the ſmalleſt are a Foot thick, and 2 Foot in length; ſome 3 Foot thick, 6 long, and 4 broad: The highth of the greateſt of theſe is 520 Foot, and each Face in breadth 682 Foot.

The Aſcent conſiſts of between 200 and 210 Steps; the Top, to thoſe that are below, appears like the point of a Spire, though on the top there is a Platform of 24 Foot ſquare, and is paved only with

with 12 Stones, some of which are broken, or rather worn out by time; and from thence you have a Prospect of *Old Caire*, *Boulack*, the Ruins of the Ancient famed *Memphis*, the Mountains and Desarts of *Ægypt*; but it requires a strong Head to look down to the bottom, where Men and Cattle seem no bigger than Crows, and a good Arm cannot throw a Stone beyond the Foundation, for it will light upon some part of the Work; there were formerly Steps on every side, but Time, the Consumer of all things, has wasted and crumbled several of the Stones, so that in some parts there are dreadful Precipices, therefore Strangers take with them a Guide, who is used to Ascend, and it is their safest way: They as it were clamber up the Steps, being of that heighth, that they are forced to use their Hands and Knees, some 3 Foot, and others less; there is a Room by the way to rest and refresh one, in which are divers Images, Sculptures, and other Contrivances, according to the manner of the Ancients, and near the bottom you enter into a descending Alley 20 Paces long, and 3 Foot high, so that one must stoop very low; at the end of this there is a place to creep through like a little Wicket, which is even with the Ground; and this brings you into another little Alley like the former, only in this you must ascend, and this Alley ends in two others; that on the right Hand has no inclination, and leads to a vaulted Chamber 18 Foot long, and 12 broad; at the entrance into this Alley is a very deep Well, or Pit, though destitute of Water, in which are divers Caves, entering at the bottom, by the sides, and into this one must be let with Ropes, having a lighted Torch or Tapour, for it is exceeding Dark, which you must take care to secure, by reason of the great number of Bats that are bred, and flutter about that dark aboad; wherefore the more Prudent carry Tinder-boxes along with them, to re-kindle the extinguish'd Light: Opposite to the last Alley, there is another that begins so high in the Wall, that we were constrained to climb up

to

to it, but to make amends, we found it much higher and broader than the rest; and having walked 70 Paces, still ascending, a spacious Room discloſed it self, which was 33 Foot long, and 16 broad, paved with 9 entire Stones, the length of them equal to the breadth of the Room; the Walls are of a curious Porphery, and at one end there is an empty Tomb of a very hard Stone, between 7 and 8 Foot long, and between 3 and 4 Foot broad, but broken about the Edges by such as visited the place, to carry with them as a Token. This Tomb is held to be made for the same *Pharaoh* that was over-whelmed in the *Red-Sea*, pursuing the *Israelites*.

The Piramid standing neareſt to this is little, in compariſon of it, being only 150 Foot, and each of the Sides or Faces 200 Foot broad: The common opinion is, that it was built by a beautiful Woman, called *Rhodope*, who was *Æsop*'s fellow Slave in *Ægypt*, with whom the King became Enamour'd, and she got so much Money by her Love Intrigues, as defrayed the Charges of building it. The third is little inferiour to the first, for it is 510 Foot in heighth, and the breadth of each Face is 630 Foot, being a manner a Quadrilatrial Figure, as are the rest.

There is to be obſerved the Ruins of an Ancient Temple, before each of them, and a huge Idol of Stone standing very near those ruinated Structures, about 26 Foot high, and in all, proportionable, where they say, Oracles were delivered of old; but the Cheat now appears plain, for in the Head of it there is a deep hole, wherein a Man may easily hide himself; and here, no doubt, the Priest was placed who gave the Oracle to delude the People, his Noise coming through holes made in the Nostrils of the Idol; and so we may conclude of the rest, who with Ambiguous Answers, abused those that came to enquire future Events, or to be resolved in doubtful Matters. This *Colossus* is cut in a Rock, representing a Woman.

From

From hence we Travelled to a large Village, called *Sacara*, the Burying-place of the Ancient *Ægyptians*, in which there are Catacombs, or Sepulcheral Vaults. Theſe are diſtinct Subteraneous Chambers built of ſquare Stone; and in theſe are the Bodies that are called the *Mummies* of *Ægypt*, where a Moor is the Maſter of them, to open them for ſuch as will give him Money, the entrance otherways being covered with Sand; the opening is above, through which one muſt go, and ſo down by a Ladder, or with a Rope; they were heretofore full of Bodies of the Ancient *Ægyptians*, ſo skilfully Embalmed, that they were, perhaps, preſerved 3 or 4000 Years, with their Epitaphs in Letters of Gold on Cloth; their Coffins were enriched with Hierogliphicks, and the Figures of the Deceaſed in Relievo, and many Images, much Gold, and Jewels, were found with the Bodies; but the covetouſneſs of the *Moors* and *Turks*, and the curioſity of the *Franks*, who purchaſe them of the former at a dear Rate, have almoſt exhauſted them, though 'tis believed there are ſome that were never opened, and that the *Moors* conceal them out of Avarice, to take out what is precious, and raiſe the price of ſuch Rarities to a higher Rate: Being let down in one of theſe Vaults, I ſaw many parts of Bodies, but little entire, they being much broken and mangled by ſuch as had, out of Curioſity, carried away pieces of them.

This place is full of Piramids, but moſt of them very ſmall, unleſs one that never was finiſhed, which, if compleated, had been near in bigneſs, to the largeſt I have mentioned, proportionable to the Baſis; there are in it, Aſcending and Deſcending Alleys, at the end of which are 3 Rooms; but it not being finiſhed as the reſt, as to what it might have been is but Conjecture; ſome hold that this mighty Work ceaſed when *Alexander* the Great ſeized on *Ægypt*, and the *Greeks* wreſted the Kingdom from the Race of the Ancient *Ægyptian* Kings.

On

On the other ſide of the *Nile*, oppoſite to this place, are to be ſeen the Ruins of the Ancient *Memphis*, where the *Ægyptian* Kings held their Court; but Time, and the ſpoiling Hand of War, has made it as *Troy*, a heap of Ruins: It ſeems to have been exceeding large, and extended along the River, till you come over-againſt *Old Caire*, ſo that although I ſpent many Hours in viewing theſe Ruins, I could find nothing of Note, but pieces of Pillars, and Images, the low Foundations of what ſeem to have been Ancient Temples, and little elſe Remarkable.

Returning towards *Caire*, I came to *Maltherea*, 3 Miles diſtant from the City, where are a great many curious ſhading Orange-Trees, and a delicious Spring of Water, which is ſaid to have been the abiding place of the Bleſſed Virgin, when ſhe fled with our Saviour into *Ægypt*: There are likewiſe Mirtle, and Lemon-Trees, that render the place very pleaſant. This Spring and *Joſeph's* Well in *Caire*, are all the Springs of Water I could ſee or hear of in *Ægypt*. That Well is of a prodigious Depth, cut in a ſolid Rock 106 Foot deep, yet ſo broad and winding are the Steps, that two Oxen may go down to the bottom, where, in a Hole, is a very curious Spring, and that Water is held precious; near it are ſome remains of *Pharaoh's* Pallace, and a Room called *Joſeph's* Hall, adorned with Gold and Azure, and many Pillars, alſo his Steward's Houſe, remarkable for 12 Columns of Thebaick Marble. Near to this there is a dreadful Priſon, in which, it is held, that Patriarch was caſt, upon the falſe Accuſation of his Miſtreſs; this conſiſts of ſeveral Dungeons cut of the Rock, and if Tradition be true, his caſe in that place could not but be lamentable, for it appears very Diſmal and Loathſome.

The common received opinion that it Rains not in *Ægypt* is groundleſs; the Showers fall ſeldomer, and leſs violently than in other places, ſo that a great part of the Country is dry and barren Sand; the

the chief Fertility is occasioned by the melting of the Snow from the Mountains, and the overflowing the River *Nile*, of which famous River, I come now to speak more particularly.

This River has its source near the Mountains of the Moon, or Jews Mountains in *Æthiopia*, where it is very small, but gathers many Rivers in long running, which makes it swell much; it runs through the length of *Ægypt*, having its course from South to North, discharging it self into the *Mediterranean* Sea, by two Mouths, making a Triangular Isle, by the *Greeks* called *Delta*, because it resembles the Greek Δ; these Mouths are Navigable for large Vessels; for though it has others, they are less, and can properly be called no other than Rivulets; It is broader than the *Seine*, and for the most part glides smoothly, unless where its Cataracts make it rage and foam, by its falling from a great heighth; when it overflows it appears like a little Sea, the Water is naturally thick and muddy, but they have a way to Clarifie it, by running it through Vessels, filled with white Earth, and then it is very wholesome. Most of the Cities, Towns, and Villages, are Scituate on its Banks, or very near it, for the conveniency of Water, which is precious in that Country, for there are so many Villages, that you have scarce passed one, but you come at another. This River abounds not much with Fish, and there is but one good sort found at *Caire*, called a *Variole*, but there are a vast number of *Crocodiles* in it, who, no doubt, devour the Fish; this is an Amphibeous Creature, living at pleasure in the Water, or on Land; the Head of it is flat above and below, and the Eyes of it indifferently big, and very darkish; they have a long sharp Snout, with long sharp Teeth, but no Tongue to be perceived; the Body large, and all of a bigness; the Back covered with high Scales, like the Heads of large Nails, of a greenish colour, so hard, that they are Proof against a Halbert; their Tailes are very long, covered over with Scales, but the Belly is white, and pretty ten-

der; it has four ſhort Legs, with five Claws on the foremoſt Feet, and but four on the hinder. It grows as long as it Lives, and ſome are about 20 Foot from Head to Tail; theſe great ones many times ſnap young Children at Land, and ſometimes put up their Noſes, and pull People out of their Boats in the River; ſo that many go with Spikes to prevent their putting up their Noſes; and it is dangerous to ſwim, where their haunts are: But that they Weep when they have taken their Prey, is, for what I could find, a Fable.

To take theſe Creatures, they make a great many Pits by the River ſide, and cover them with rotten Sticks, ſo that paſſing over, the Sticks give way, and they fall in; then Men let down a Rope with a running Nooze, to muzzle their Snouts, and ſo they draw them up, and kill them for their Skins, which they ſell to Strangers at good Rates: None but the *Moors* will Eat of their Fleſh.

There is alſo in the River a Hyppopotamuſes, or Sea-Horſe, and is of a tawney Colour, the hinder part like a Bouffler, though its Legs are ſhort, yet very thick; it has the muzzle of an Ox, and ſome are about the bigneſs of a Camel: its Head reſembles that of a Horſe, and is very great, but the Eyes are ſmall; the Ears little; the Neck thick; the Tail like an Elephant's; in the lower Jaw it has four Teeth half a Foot long, two of them are crooked, and as big as the Horn of an Ox in circumference.

This famous River mainly fertiliſes *Ægypt*, and without it, it would be deſolate; nay, if it ſhould fail but one Year to overflow, there would be a Famine in the Land, which ſome hold it did for ſeven Years, when the mighty Famine happen'd in *Joſeph*'s time, reſtrained by an Almighty Power; but ſeeing that Famine extended to others Land, this may be but Conjectural; when it Ebbs it leaves a fat nitreous Slime, that greatly enriches the Land, and makes it produce plentifully. They have few Fruit-Trees, and no Wine; for the ſmall quantity of Grapes found, are thick rhined, producing lit-

tle

the Juyce. The chief Trees are, the Fig-Trees of *Pharo*, the true Sycamore, Cassa, Papyrus, Colocasse, Orange, Lemon and Myrtle Trees, but these three last are mostly brought thither; they have great store of Onions, and other Roots; also plenty of Corn, and divers sorts of fine Fowls, as Yellow Birds, Wild Turtles, Pidgeons, and Larks; and indeed *Ægypt* may be rightly termed an Earthly Paradise, did not the Oppression of their Governors much abate the Peoples pleasure, but that is very great, as in other parts of the *Ottoman* Empire.

At the cutting of the Khalis, or Sluyce of the *Nile*, there is a great Festival held, and triumphant Shows by Land and Water, with much rejoycing for many Days, and whereas the Ancient *Ægyptians* used to Sacrifice a Boy and a Girl taken by lot, to their fancied God of the River; but the *Turks* abolished that ill Custom, and instead thereof, place on each side, in the Night, the resemblance of a Man and a Woman in Fire, by fixing Lamps very dexterously to represent their Figures.

Ægypt, as other Countries under the Turkish Government, consists of a mixed People, of divers Nations, as *Turks*, *Jews*, *Arabs*, *Franks*, *Armenians*, *Greeks*, *Moors*, and the Ancient Inhabitants, who have liberty to exercise their Religion as they please, but have Mulcts set upon them, for the *Turks* care not what they do in that nature, so they can screw Money out of them, they being, next to the *Jews*, the most covetous of all People. The Chief Government under the Grand Signior is in the Hands of a Bassa, who has his Sub Bassa's: The great Men of the Country are called Beys, who often bring his Head into danger, if he displeases them, by their sending complaints to the *Ottoman* Port: And thus having given you an account of the most considerable rarities of *Ægypt*, as to what I saw there, &c. I shall further entertain you with my Travels to *Palestine*, or the *Holy-Land*.

CHAP. X.

Travels in Paleſtine, *or the* Holy Land, *and all the remarkable Things and Places to be ſeen in it, more exact than ever yet deſcribed; Of* Mount Libanus, *and places Adjacent.*

BEING deſirous to viſit the *Holy Land*, ſo much Famed throughout the World, for the many Wonders God wrought there, and the many Memorable and Venerable Antiquities yet to be ſeen. I provided my ſelf of ſuch Neceſſaries, as my Reaſon dictated, and as I was told I ſhould ſtand in need of. Upon Notice that a Caravan was ready to part, I went and enter'd my ſelf one of the Company; ſo every one having Notice, and being in a readineſs, we ſet forward, but the Wind blowing hard, we had like to have been over-whelmed with Clouds of Sand raiſed by it, which flying about our Ears, ſpoiled ſome of our Proviſion; however, the Storm being over in 3 or 4 Hours, we kept on our way, with Timbrels Sounding, to chear the Cammels, that they might purſue their Journey with more Alacrity. The firſt place that offered it ſelf to us, was *Ithanque*, a little Town, where the Caravan of *Jeruſalem* makes its firſt Stage; the next was *Balbeys*, and from thence we proceeded, the next Day to *Salabia*, where are the pleaſant Woods of *Tamariſk*, and there we lay in Tents, ſetting Guards, for fear of a ſurprize from Robbers, lurking in thoſe Woods: Our Caravan conſiſting of above 100 Camels, beſides Mules, and Horſes, with a conſiderable ſtrength of Men, but no attempt was made; and

and the next Evening we reached *Elbir Devedar*, and encamped near some dirty Wells of Water, that our Beasts might be the better refreshed; and then marched to *Catice*, where we had a Guard of *Turks* Armed, to conduct us to *Riche*, for now we were come within danger of the *Arabs*, and there I saw a long Pit, of fine white Salt, which the People affirmed was made only of Rain Water. We parted from thence, and went to *Birlab*, and having rested there, we journied to *Bir Acat*, a place in the Desart destitute of Water, yet full of Quick-sands; however, we were forced to lie there; but the next Day travelling on, we found a Well, called *Sibile-El-Bar-Acat*, made by an Aga, who passed that way in his journey to *Constantinople*; it is covered with a Dome, supported by Pillars. This Water very much refreshed us, and our Cattle; but going from hence we entered again into the Quick-sands, which reach as far as *Riche*, and well it was we got to that place, for about a quarter of an Hour after a Storm arose, which lasted about 30 Hours. This Village is not far from the Sea, and has a Castle built of little Rock Stones, as is likewise all the Houses of the Village; and here I observed they had so much Marble, that their Wells were made of that Stone, and their Burying-places are full of them. Having refreshed our selves, we departed for *Caumows*, with a Guard of 8 *Turks*, and from thence we Travelled through Quick-sands, though it Rained, Thundered, and blew hard, to *Zaka*, a place where no Houses are, for that Name was only given it from three Wells of Brackish Water we found there, but passing on, we came to Wells of pleasant Water, and now we begun to have a prospect of a fine Country, where some Corn-Land appeared, which much encouraged us; there we found many pleasant Trees, and good Meadows, so that now we concluded we were on the Borders of the *Land of Promise*, and indeed we soon reached the City of *Gaza*, which stands about two Miles from the Sea, and was anciently very Stately and Famous for

Trade; many of the Ancient Pillars are yet remaining, there being almoſt every where Marble Pillars to be ſeen; it was one of the five Lordſhips of the *Philiſtins*, the Gates of which *Sampſon* carried away on his Shoulders, and left them on a little Hill a Mile diſtant. Near the City there is a Caſtle, with 4 corner Towers, and the Gates are of Iron: Hard by this are found lumps of ruined Walls, that cannot be broke with a Hammer, being the Ruins of a Caſtle, built by the Ancient *Romans*; near the Caſtle, behind the Burying-place, where we encamped, ſtood the Houſe that *Sampſon* pulled down, when he by that means deſtroyed ſo many *Philiſtines*, and many other things of Note, which I had not time to obſerve, by reaſon the Caravan was in haſte to depart.

From *Gaza* we paſſed to a Village, called *Megdel*, and ſo to *Ithanſedoud*; all the way there are pleaſant Plains, full of Trees and Corn, and in the Seaſon theſe Plains are Embroidered with Tulips and Emonies, that grow without planting; ſo paſſing a Village called *Yebna*, at the end of it we croſſed over a Bridge, and from thence proceeded over lovely Plains to *Rama*, and encamped in a Plain over-againſt it; however, I went with a few others, to viſit ſome Merchants that reſided there: This Town depends on the Baſſa of *Gaza*. Here is the Houſe of *Nicodemus*, now inhabited by French Merchants; there is alſo a pretty Church: The Church of the Forty Martyrs is in this Town. The Doors of the Houſes are not above 3 Foot high, and they make them ſo, on purpoſe to prevent the Inſolent *Arabs*, that Border on them, from entring their Houſes on Horſeback: there is likewiſe a Church Dedicated to the Honour of St. *George*.

Decamping from hence at 6 a Clock in the Morning, we ſaw, about 9, on our right Hand, the Village of *Good Thief*, called in *Arabick*, *Bethlakij*. After that we paid the Caſſaire, or Cuſtom, and ſo had a Guard allowed us to *Jeruſalem*; but being juſt about to avoid another Caſſaire, we were entangled

tangled among the Mountains, and obliged to encamp there, in a place close by a ruinous old Building, which had been a Convent of *Franciscan* Friars. Some Arches of the Ruins are yet standing above, and many others under Ground, where the *Arabs* keep a few Cows; a Spring of pleasant Water issuing out of a Rock near it.

The next day, we passed on towards *Jerusalem*, once exceeding Famous, but now contracted into a small compass; we left *Degib*, a small Village, so called in *Arabick*, and was once the Town of *Samuel* the Prophet; it stands upon an Eminence, there is a Mosque covered with a Dome, they say *Samuel* is Buried there, and the *Jews* visit it out of Devotion; and soon after we discovered the City of *Jerusalem*, which the *Turks* call *Coudscherif*, and came before it, but being *Franks*, as they call the Latin Christians, we could not be admitted till the Religious sent for us; and when we had waited about an Hour, at that which is called the Gate of *Damascus*, we were introduced by the Trucheman of the Convent, who came with an Officer belonging to the *Basha* of the Province, who visited the Bagage, and then we were conducted to the Convent of St. *Saviour*, who Entertained us Charitably, and shewed us to an Apartment were we might rest our selves, and a Monk came and washed our Feet, and the Religious were very Industrious to shew us the places of Note, and to begin our visits of the Holy Places. First we passed near to the *Judgment Hall*, from whence our Saviour went out bearing his Cross; it is so called, because, those that were Condemned to die, went out of the City by it: At present within the City, advanced a few steps, proceeding on our way, we pass under an Arch, where is a Stone on which they say, *Pilate* set our Saviour, when he said, *Ecce Homo*, *Behold the Man*. This is a large Arch reaching from one side of the Street to the other, and has two Windows looking into the Street, only separated by a little Marble Piller, and under this Window is an Inscription, *viz.* *Tolle Tolle Crucifi*

cifice eum; Take and Crucifie him. A little further is the Palace of *Herod*, from whence our Saviour was sent back to *Pilate*, and although these two were at variance before, yet the Prince of Peace passing between them, they soon, even that very day, were at Agreement: And indeed, there are many of the Antient Structures remaining, though this famous City has undergone so many Revolutions, yet it is Conjectur'd, that many new Works have been added to the Old Ruins, and they much repaired in many places. The *Sheep Gate* still remains entire, and over the place where our Saviour was Scourged, there is a pretty Chaple Erected; the Front and some other parts of *Solomon*'s Temple are yet remaining, and there are several Arches that make a lovely Porch before the Door of the Temple; nor is the Tower of *David* quite defeated, there remaining many Ruins to shew the Strength and Magnificence of it. There are abundance of Chaples in this City, some belonging to the *Latin Christians*, others to the *Greeks*, and some to *Armenians Abasines*, &c. and these were raised on several Religious occasions, where the passages in Holy Scripture are recited to have hapned; but they pay the *Turks* a large tribute for possessing them, yet they get much Money by the visits that are made in Pilgrimages, the *Turks* often choping and changing with those that will give most Money, and they who are the richest, commonly possess those that are most in Veneration, and consequently most frequented; but above all the rest that are very numerous, the Church of the Holy Sepulcher is in the highest Veneration, therefore I shall briefly describe it.

All *Franks* that enter it at first, are taxed 24 Piasters a piece, and the Religious pay only 12; but when you have once paid that Tax, and Entered it, you may go in as often as you will when it is open, giving a Mudine to the *Turk*, who keeps the Door.

Before you enter into the Church, you pass a kind of a large Court that is before it, laid with Freestone; and on this, the *Jews* do not, or, as some say, dare

dare not tread: Then the Steeple appears, which is on the left side corner of the Front of the Church; it is square on all sides, has three stories of Windows, two in front, supported and separated by two Marble Pillars, and heretofore is said to have 18 Bells in it. The Door of this Church is very Magnificent, and over it are many Figures in Brass Relicks, being the Representations of several Sacred Histories; the Door is sealed with the Seal of the *Basha*, and when any enter, it is immediately shut again. In this Church, there is the Chaple of Apparition, so called; because it is held, our Lord appeared in that place to the Blessed Virgin, immediately after his Resurrection; and from thence we went down to the Chaple of St. *Helena*, Inventrix of the Cross, and having viewed some others, we passed through the said Chaple, where it was told the Women, that Christ was risen in this Chaple. There is a little Altar, and three Windows to give light before the Door, a Lamp, and seven Lamps within it, and there lies a Stone said to be rowled from the mouth of our Saviour's Sepulcher, on which the Angel set, when his Brightness appeared so transparent.

On the right hand as you enter, is the place where the Body of our Lord was laid in, cut out of the Rock, in which there is a Table of the same Rock raised about two Foot from the Ground, or somewhat more. This takes up one half of the Breadth, and the whole length of the Chaple; it has been faced with white Marble to prevent its being broken, for the *Christians* who came to visit it, strove eagerly to have little Bits of it, to place in Rings and other Gold Ornaments as a precious Relick. And now it serves for an Alter, where the Latin Priests celebrate Mass, none being permitted to do the like; and in the Roof of it are three Holes to evaporate the Smoak of the Lamps, there being 44 of them in it of Silver and Gold, sent by the Kings of *France*, *Spain*, and other Princes. The inside of this place is faced with White Marble, and

environed

environed on the out-side with 10 curious Pillars of the same Stone, and the Lamps are round about it. It is covered with a Plat-form in the middle, whereof just over the Holes that Evaporate the Smoak, there is a Dome about 6 Foot in Height, covered with Lead, which stands upon 12 little Porphery coloured Pillars, two and two on the Plat-form, which makes six Arches, and under every one of them hangs 3 Lamps; though when it runs, the Water falls through the Aizie in the Dome of the Church, on the little Dome, from whence it is conveyed by a Pipe into a hole.

Before the Door of the Sepulcher, at an equal distance from it, and the Door of the Quire, is a prodigeous Lump of Silver; they say, that two Men can hardly Fathom it, it was sent by *Philip* III. of *Spain*, whose Arms are on it in several places with this Motto: *Philipus* III. *Rex Hispaniorum me donavit.*

The Quire and the Body of the Church is of curious Work; it is said to be placed in the middle of the World, because in *Psalm* 74. its said, *God wrought Salvation in the midst of the Earth*, but not to be too tedious in this matter, I must cut short and proceed to other places. We went soon after to visit the Mount of *Olives*, the place where our Lord wept over *Jerusalem*, and foretold its Destruction; and from thence indeed there is a curious prospect of the City. On the top of this Mount is the place of the Ascension, where is a Chaple with 8 Fronts, and a little Dome covered with Lead, supported by 8 Pillars of White Marble; in this Chaple is the print of a Foot on a piece of Rock, which they say, our Saviour left when he Ascended; and that there was an other of them which the *Turks* have cut away and kept to shew to such as will give Money to see it in the Temple of *Solomon*. Then we visited the *Gyot*, in which it is held the Apostles made the Creed, and the Sepulchers of *Absalon* and *Jehosaphat*; the Valley wherein they stand is no other now, than a great Ditch, that conveys the Water from

from *Jeruſalem*, but the chief *Jews* hire their Burying Places here of the *Turks*, ſuperſtitiouſly fancying, that Judgment will firſt begin here at the general Reſurrection, and therefore they who are Buried in it, ſhall be firſt diſpatched. About *Abſalon*'s Tomb is a great heap of Stones, for every one that paſſes by, is obliged to throw a Stone at it, in deteſtation of his Rebellion againſt his Father.

Near this, there is the Tomb of *Zacharias*, and the Brook *Kedron*; this Brook has over it a Stone-Bridge, but many times it is dry, as it hapned at this time, ſo that we paſſed over without wetting our Feet, though not near the Bridg.

As for the Garden of *Olives*, it is a very ſmall place, and few Trees remaining in it; it is incloſed with a very inconſiderable Wall, and into it is taken the Garden of *Bethſemany*, where our Saviour was in his Agony, and near it is the Sepulcher of of the Bleſſed Virgin *Mary*, which is a Church almoſt under ground, of it, nothing but the Front can be ſeen, and hereabouts are ſeveral other Sepulchers to be ſeen, as thoſe of *Joachin* and *Anna*, and the place where St. *Stephen* was Stoned; ſo entering by St. *Stephen*'s Gate, we came to the *Sheep-pool*, which is near to *Solomon*'s Temple; and here are yet to be ſeen the Sepulchers of *Godfrey* of *Bulloin*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of *Jeruſalem*; that of his Brother *Balwin*, and others that ſucceeded him, though time has much defaced ſome of them. From hence I went to Mount *Calvery*, where is a Hole half a foot Diameter, and 2 foot Deep, in which the *Chriſtians* there ſay, the Croſs ſtood when our Saviour was Crucified; they ſhewed a Rock, with a cleft in it, that they ſay rent at his giving up the Ghoſt.

My curioſity now led me to viſit the Burying Places of the Kings of *Jeruſalem*, which is of great Antiquity; and to this you go out of the City by the Gates of *Damaſcus*, and when I came there, I entered into a great Court, cut out and made even in a Rock, and the Rock ſerves to it as a Wall; and on the left hand there is a Gallery cut out of the ſame Rock,

Rock, with ſeveral Pillars beautified with Stone, Embeliſhed with curious Figures, and Engravenings on Stone; and there is a little open place at one end of this Gallery, through which I crept on my Hands and Knees, and then found a large ſquare Room cut out of the Rock; and further there are other Rooms, and curious ſquare Tombs cut out of the Rock alſo, ſo that it ſeem'd a Palace rather than a Burying place, though here many of the Antient Kings of *Jeruſalem* lye Interr'd; and returning from this Magnificent Palace of the Dead, I went to viſit the Cave, where, it is held, the Prophet *Jeremiah* compoſed his Lamentations. It is a large lightſome *Grot*, the Roof of it ſupported by a Pillar that ſtands in the midſt of it, being very near the Burying Place of the Kings.

Having been curious in making theſe Obſervations, I had a deſire to ſee the famous River *Jordan*, ſo renowned in Holy Writ; and ſo taking Proviſion for the way, and Company alſo to guard us againſt the inſults of the *Arabs*, who watch all opportunities to rob Strangers and *Turks*; We ſet forward with a great many more that had the ſame deſire, and joyning with us in our way, lay almoſt all along among the Mountains, the Road being very Stony from *Jeruſalem* to the Plains of *Jerico*; before the latter, our Caravan, as we may Term it, Encamped, having paſſed *Bithany*, and the Fountain of the Apoſtles. Here we refreſhed our ſelves, and though *Jerico* was once a famous City, it now conſiſts of a few Brick Houſes, inhabited by *Arabs*, who live a miſerable poor life; near to this is the Houſe of *Zacheus*, and here we found the ſo much talked of Roſes of *Jerico*; theſe Blow not unleſs they are put into Water, and then they Blow in all Seaſons, contrary to the Opinions of thoſe who ſay they blow not but on *Chriſtmas Day*, and others on all the Feſtivals of our Lady.

Travelling by many places of little Note, at length we came to *Jordan*, and Encamped near it: On the Banks there are many Almond, and other

pleaſant

pleasant Trees; it is not broader than the *Thames*, but very deep in most places, it has its beginning from 2 small Springs, called *Jor*, and *Dan*, towards Mount *Libanus*, and from them, put together, it takes its Name. The Water of this River, they say, will not corrupt by length of time, though it appears not very clear: It runs from *East* to *South*, and passing through the Sea of *Tiberius*, loses its Waters in the *Asphalian* Lake, or *Dead Sea*, which sprung up in the Plains, when the Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorah* were sunk in Flames; in the Sylvian places, on the Bank of this River, the warbling of Birds is very Harmonious, especially of Nightingals, who are there in great numbers. At this River many paid their Devotions, in remembrance of the Wonders that had been done there; as the Children of *Israel*'s passing it dry shod: *Elisha*'s dividing it with his Mantle; and our Saviour's being Baptized.

As for the Dead Sea, it is a great standing Lake of Salt and Bitter Water; all the Plains that border on it are Bitter, and they say there are Trees growing on the brink of it, that bear Apples with a Scarlet and Golden Rhine, fair to the Eye to delude Travellers, but as a Curse on the Place, they are within, Ashes and Smoke. Some hold, that a living thing will not sink in this Water, but the fumes arising from it were so extream it being hot Weather, that I thought it convenient not to approach too near it. I was informed that this Sea, or rather Lake, was 100 Miles in length, and 25 over, but that no Fish can live in it. In our return, I saw the Mount where our Saviour Fasted Forty Days, and was Tempted; on the top of it there is a Grot, wherein is an Altar: This Grot is said to be the place of his Residence, during that time, and there the Monks say Mass on publick occasions; and coming down again, I saw the Prophet *Elisha*'s Well, where he made the Bitter Water Sweet, by casting Salt into it; and now the Water is of an excellent pleasant Taste; This Well is about a quarter of an Hours Travel from the Foot of the Mountain.

Going

Going now to *Bethlehem*, they ſhewed us by the way the Houſe of St. *Simeon*, and the place where *Elias* was Born; alſo the Houſe of *Jacob*, *Rachel*'s Sepulcher, and *David*'s Ceſtern.

Bethlehem was anciently a Town of the Tribe of *Judah*, and has been, as appears by the Ruins, a very fair place, but now greatly reduced: There is in it a Convent of Monks; and the place where St. *Jerom* reſided, and taught the People, is a pretty compact Church, dedicated to the Honour of St. *Catherine*: There is alſo the Sepulcher of the *Innocents*, where many of them that *Herod* cauſed to be Slain were Buried: The Oratory of St. *Jerom*, and his Tomb: The place where our Saviour was laid in the Mainger, is to be ſeen. There is an Altar where the three Kings adored him, and made their precious Offerings; and all theſe places are adorned with pleaſant Structures and Ornaments, Lamps burning in moſt of them, and Sculptures reſembling the Hiſtories; in one of which, the Virgin *Mary* is repreſented, kneeling before our Saviour, who has 2 Crowns of Silver on his Head, which things are the only Ornament of the place; near it is the Sealed Well, and the 3 Fiſh-Ponds of *Solomon*; the Well is a pleaſant little hole, but deep, with 3 Springs bubling up; at the end, Aquaducts convey the Water to *Jeruſalem*; the Fiſh-Ponds ſeem to be cut out of a Rock, being ſmooth Stone at bottom, with Springs, one at the end of another, lowering by degrees, ſo that they communicate their Water; and Travelling on, there is the Garden of *Solomon*, ſhut in between 2 Hills, which ſerve for a Wall on either ſide; alſo the Cave where *David* cut off the lap of *Saul*'s Garment; and paſſing the Town of *Sanacarib*, we came in with the Mountains of *Judea*: the Town is called ſo, becauſe *Sanacarib*'s Army Encamping there, was cut off by the Angel: The Fountain is likewiſe in the way, where the *Æthiopian* Eunuch was Baptized by St. *Philip*, and is a pleaſant Spring of Sweet Water; and by bad way paſſing the Village of *Battir*, we came to the Deſert of St.

St. *John* Baptiſt, and upon an Aſcent are ſeen the Ruins of an Old Monaſtery; under this is a Grot, where they ſay he lay, and in it, the form of a Bed cut in the Rock. There are many things to be ſeen, in the Mountains of *Judea*, more than here mentioned; but being tedious ways, Rockey and Stoney, I declined to Travel further in them, they being compoſed of many Riſings and Fallings, ſome very Craggy, others Smooth, with pleaſant ſhading Trees on them, as Olives, Palms, *&c.*

Having reſted a little after this Journey, and eſcaped ſome Ambuſhcades of the *Arabs*, I, as well as many more of my Companions, being deſirous to ſee other memorable places before we left the *Holy-Land*, our curioſity lead us to paſs through the Gate of *Bethlehem*, which we did, pretty early in the Morning, and the firſt thing of Note that ſaluted our Eyes, was the Foot of Mount *Sion*, on the Right Hand, and the two Fiſh-Ponds of *Berſheba*, in one of which, *David* beheld her bathing from his Pallace in Mount *Sion*, when he fell enamour'd with her, and committed that grievous Sin, which made not only him but all *Iſrael* Mourn. Then we paſſed to the Field which is called *Acaldema*, or *the Field of Blood*, and here the *Armenian* Strangers find a Burying-place: ſo going forward, we ſaw the Grot where 8 of the Apoſtles hid themſelves, when our Lord was made a Priſoner; it is now a pleaſant cool place for ſhelter, and in it are to be ſeen the Pictures of the Apoſtles. Near this there is a Burying-place for the *Greeks*, and Strangers, and a Pit, where tis ſaid, the *Jews* hid the Fire of the Altar, by the Command of the Prophet *Jeremiah*, when they were carried away Captive by *Nabuchadnezzar* into *Babylon*; cloſe by it there is a Moſque, with a Reſervatory of pleaſant Water to refreſh Travellers.

But going on, we came to the Pool of *Shilo*, where the Blind Man waſhed, and had his ſight reſtored him, and paſſing on, ſaw where the Prophet *Iſaiah* was ſawn aſunder with a wooden Saw, by the command of *Manaſſes*. Then we journied by the Foun-

tain

tain of the Blessed Virgin, to the Mount of *Scandal*, near which *Judas* hanged himself, after he had betrayed his Lord; it is so called, because the Concubins perverted his wise Heart, and made him commit Folly, in offering Sacrifice to *Moloch*, and the Idol of *Chamos*; and so we came to *Bethany*: There we saw the Ruins of the House of *Simeon* the *Lepar*, where *Mary Magdalen* anointed our Saviour with the precious Oynement; also the Ruins of the Castle of *Lazarus* on a little Ascent, and at the Foot of it is the Sepulchre out of which he was raised; it is a little Grot, and in a Table of Stone, where the Priests on Solemn Days say Mass, they show there the Stone that our Saviour sat on, when he bewailed him, and called him forth; and places where the House of *Martha* stood; as also the Fig-Tree that withered when Christ Cursed it; and that where the Ass stood, which he sent for and Rod in Triumph to *Jerusalem*: Then we went to the Grot where St. *Peter* Wept bitterly after he had denied his Master; and from hence we turned to Mount *Sion*, where our Lord celebrated the Holy Supper with his Apostles, and instituted the Blessed Sacrament. Here is the Room he entred when the Doors were shut, and the Holy Ghost descended on the Day of Penticost.

Not far from hence we beheld the Sepulchers of *David*, and *Solomon*. This Mountain was formerly within the compass of the Walls of *Jerusalem*; but *Selim* the *Turkish* Sultan rebuilding them, it was excluded, and the City much streightned. We saw many other things hereabouts, as the Iron Gate, the House of *Zebedee*, and that of the High Priest, *Annas*; the place where St. *James* was beheaded; the Houses of St. *Thomas*, and *Mark*; the Prison of St. *Peter*, whence he was delivered by the Angel, &c.

And now returning a little again to *Jerusalem*, I shall give somewhat more of its Description than hitherto I have done.

This Famous City is seated on a Barren Mountanous Ground for the most part, it produces no Food;

Food, but at a distance the Land is exceeding Fertile. The Streets are narrow and crooked, the Building but indifferent, all the Ancient Magnificence being in a manner laid in Rubbish; it has 6 Gates, *viz.* That of *Ephraim*, the Gates of *Bethlehem*, *Jaffa*, *Damascus*, *Zion*, and the *Dungate*, and one that is walled up, called the *Golden-Gate*, because our Saviour entered in Triumph at it; the *Sheep-Gate* is not reckoned, as being much ruined. The *Turks* keep them all shut at Noon-Prayer, because they have a Prophecy, that at that time, the Christians shall surprize *Jerusalem*, and particularly on a Friday, on which Day they are very apprehensive it will happen; not far from the *Golden-Gate* there is a Pillar bearing out of the Wall like a Cannon, and on this the *Turks* have a foolish Opinion, that *Mahomet* shall sit at the Day, to see whether *Christ* Judges the *Christians* Uprightly, and if he does, *Mahomet* will give him his Sister in Marriage, with a great Portion; and then changing himself into a great Sheep, he shall fly up in the Air a vast height, with the *Mahometans* entangled in his Wool, and there shake himself terribly, and such as can hold fast shall go with him into Paradise, but such as fall off shall drop into Hell. The Walls of this City are fair and strong.

Again, leaving *Jerusalem*, I went with a considerable Company to visit *Emans*, and *Jaffa*; the first of these is but 2 Leagues and an half from *Jerusalem*; by the way stands the Well where our Lo appeared to the two Disciples, after his Resurrection; a little further is the Castle where our Lord was known to them in breaking Bread, which is now very ruinous, and the Village is of little account, there being very few Houses, and those inconsiderable, which made us keep on by the way of *Ramah* to *Jaffa*, which is 4 Leagues beyond it: This *Jaffa* was Anciently called *Joppa*. It is built on the Top of a Rock, and is altogether Ruinous, there remaining no more than some Towers, and the Port at the Foot of the Rock; and to a crag of

this Rock it is Fabled, *Andromeda* was tied, when *Perſeus* the Son of *Jupiter*, and *Danae* delivered her from the Sea Monſter. Here the Prophet *Jnah* embarked when he fled from the Face of God. Here St. *Peter* raiſed *Tabitha*, *Acts* 9. and ſaw the Sheet let down from Heaven, *Acts* 10. There are Grots by the Sea-ſide for Pilgrims to reſt in; there is alſo a little Caſtle, with two Towers, one round the other, ſquare, and a great Tower ſeparated from it on one ſide, but no Houſes by the Sea. The Port has but little Water in it, and none but ſmall Barks can come up with the Fortreſſes. Mount *Carmell* being but a little diſtance from hence, by Water, I agreed with others, to take ſmall Veſſels to viſit it, but we met with a Storm by the way, that much endangered us; but at length we arrived ſafely there, and lodged in the Village of *Cayplias*, which, by the Ruins appears to have been formerly a conſiderable Town, it is at the Foot of the Mountain, and the next Morning we aſcended the Mountain, where we found a Convent of bare-footed Fryars, called *Carmelites*; theſe obſerve a very ſtrict Rule, neither eating Fleſh nor drinking Wine, totally Sequeſtring themſelves from the World, nor will they ſuffer others to do it in their Convent. This is the place where the Prophet *Elias* lived; and there is in this Mount, as they ſay, a Garden of Stone Mellons, which happened on this wiſe; the Prophet asking the Man to give him ſome of that he was gathering, he to put him off, told him they were Stones, when immediately they proved ſo indeed, by turning into Stone; they ſhewed us one of theſe, but would not ſhew us the place where they grew, leaſt we ſhould covet to carry them away; however, they feaſted us with Fruits, boiled Roots, and gave us Water to Drink; for though the Hill is Rockey, ye by their induſtry, they have raiſed many Fruit-Trees, and have variety of good Flowers. Then we ſaw the Well *Elias* made to ſpring out of the Ground, and another little Well by it; we ſaw a little diſtant from theſe, the Grot, or Cave of *Elias*

and

and *Eliſha*; it is cut very ſmooth in the Rock, above and below, near 20 Paces in length, and 15 in breadth, and very high: The *Turks* have built a little Moſque by it. This Mountain, and the Country about, it is commanded by an *Emir*, or Prince, who pays the Grand Signior a Tribute of Twelve Horſes.

I forgot to tell you of Mount *Libanus*, ſo famed for its tall Cedars, but ſuch waſt has been made of them, that I could number great and ſmall but 23. There is a Church and Monaſtery in it; there is a Patriarch belonging to it, that lives at a Village beneath, called *Cannobin*. Thus much for the *Holy Land*, whoſe Fame has over-ſpread the World.

CHAP. IX.

Travels through Syria, *and divers other Countries towards the Kingdom of* Perſia, *with many remarkable Things occuring in ſo long and hazardous a Journey by Land, and Water.*

HAving heard many Famous Things reported of *Perſia*, too many here to enumerate; and being recruited with Bills of Exchange, and other Advantages for Travelling, it being a curioſity I was enclined too from my tender Years, I found an opportunity to go in good Company for *Damaſcus*. This City is ſtill in good Reputation, and has ſix Gates, *viz.* the *Eaſt Gate*, the *Sphaies*, or *Seraglio Gate*, the *Shoo Gate*, the Gate of *Paradiſe*, the Gate of *Peace*, and St. *Thomas's Gate*: This City is an Hour and a quarters walk round it; but the Suburbs are as big again as the Town. It has in it many ſtately Buildings, ſome New, others of great Antiquity, having been Anciently the Capital City of *Syria*; but being on a Journey, I had not much leaſure to view it, or few other Towns or Cities on the way, therefore I ſhall but lightly touch on them in my Paſſage.

From hence we parted for *Aleppo*, which is one of the moſt conſiderable Cities of the *Ottoman* Empire in *Aſia*, by reaſon of the great Trade Merchants drive there; it is as large as *Damaſcus*, and has a fruitful Country lying about it. The Walls are ſtrong and well fortified; it has ten Gates, and many curious Buildings in it. This and the former are govern'd by Baſſa's, who have large dependencies.

There

There is a Court of Wells, with a Canal full of good Fiſh, but the *Turks*, on ſome ſuperſtitious account or other, forbid any to take them, alledging, for excuſe, that thoſe who Eat them will fall Sick and Die. There are in this City People of all curious Trades, and were not the oppreſſion of the *Turks*, as it is indeed all over the *Ottoman* Empire, very great, Riches would flow here in abundance.

From this place our Road lay to *Moſul* by the way of *Bir*, and *Orfa* the Ancient *Edeſſa*, but before we came to *Bir* we paſſed *Euphrates* in great Boats. This is a little Town in *Meſopotamia*, on the ſide of the River, and paſſing by ſmall Towns, and the Ruins of ſome great ones, we came to *Orfa*; The Walls are about two Hours Walk in Circumference, and pretty entire, but the Town within, though it has been Fair and Stately, lies now moſtly in Ruins. We refreſhed our ſelves here, and paſſed on by *Codgtaſar*, in the Country of *Meredin* and *Niſibia*; we ſaw in our way many Villages, ſome Towns, and other things of Note, as *Job*'s Tomb, Fields of Mellons, Cucumbers, *&c.* Our way was ſometimes over Mountains, then into Valleys, and now and then in Plains, ſeeing but few, except ſome few wandering People, who move from place to place, feeding Cattle, and carrying their Tents with them; and after a weary Journey, we came to *Moſul*, and entered it by *Bagdad Capiſi*, that looks towards the South, where we paid a Paiſtre to the Janiſary that kept the Gate.

This City, Anciently called *Aaſour*, ſtands on the ſide of the *Tigris*, which runs to the Eaſt of it. It is encompaſſed with ſtrong Stone Walls, plaiſtered over; and theſe have little pointed Battlements on the top, 2 Fingers thick, and 4 or 5 broad. There is a Caſtle in the Water of an Oval Form, and pretty ſtrong, which keeps the Paſs of the River. Many of the Houſes are fairly built with Freeſtone, and the City is about an Hours walk in compaſs: It has five Gates, beſide that I mentioned. On the other ſide of the River is the place where once

ſtood the Famous City of *Nineveh*, and ſome of the Ruins are to be ſeen, and not far diſtant, a Tomb, wherein *Jonah* is ſaid to be Buried. In Summer it is extream Hot, inſomuch, that the People keep in Vaults in the heat of the Day, and ſome in Stone Troughs of cold Water.

Having recruited our Proviſions here, it being *July*, to prevent the danger of the *Semiel*, or infectious Wind, which ariſes about this time, kills many that Travel by Land. I, and ſome of the Company, paſſed by Water on a Keleck, or a kind of a Float, faſtned on a great many Leather Baggs, filled full of Wind; but they would not ſuffer us to carry any Wine on Board, fooliſhly fancying, that it would ſink their Boat; and in this we did wiſely, for we afterwards heard of many that paſſed by Land, who were not accuſtomed to that Wind, died, being ſtifled or Poyſoned with the infectious Air. In our Paſſage we ſaw many Towns and Villages; and Men, Women, and Cattle were ſwiming their Paſſage over the River. In the Night we heard the Lions Roar on either Hand, which made us keep from the Shoar, leaſt they ſhould leap into our Kelechs, though the Natives would perſwade us, they were afraid of a Man, and that the *Arabs* uſually purſued and killed them with a Staff; but we thought fit not to lay too much ſtreſs upon this, for I had heard in *Moſul*, that many who had ſtragled from the Caravans, had been ſnaped by them, for they rove in great numbers, and Fire-Arms are the beſt defence againſt them; beſides, we were forced to ſtand on our Guard, for fear of the Thieveiſh *Arabs*, who often get aboard by ſwiming, and ſurpriſe theſe Kelechs, nor did they fail to Alarum us, but when we eſpied them, they Dived, and got to Shoar, and by that means eſcaped our Shot we made at them: But to be Brief, at laſt we came to *Bagdad*. This is a long Town, lying on the River: The firſt thing that appears is the Caſtle, to the ſide of the River, on the left Hand, and ſeems to be very well Fortified. It is built of curious

curious white Stone, though the generality of the Houſes in the Town are low and inconſiderable; it is very ſtrong on the Land-ſide, and in circuit Large, requiring at leaſt two Hours to compaſs it, at a moderate pace on Foot; there are lovely Bagnios, and fair Bazars in it. It was Founded by the *Perſians*, but taken from them by the *Turks*, and has a Baſſa for their Governor. It ſtands advantageous enough on the *Tygris*, but is thinly Peopled, by reaſon of the Licentiouſneſs of the Soldiers, who are ſcarcely under any Command.

It is extream Hot in this place in the Summer time, as in all others of the ſame Latitude. There are but few Fruit-Trees hereabouts, but every where ſtore of Licorice. They generally uſe Oyl of *Naphta* in their Lamps, it being plentiful in their Borders. They often ſend their Expreſſes from place to place by Carrier Pidgeons, faſtning the Note about their Necks, which they exactly perform, unleſs they are killed by the way, which rarely happens.

I found here a Caravan, moſtly conſiſting of *Perſians*, bound for *Hamaden* in *Perſia*; this opportunity I and others embraced, though we found the Retinue did not exceed ſixty, ſlenderly Armed, and moſtly without Tents, appearing reſolute and hardy; and paſſing *Caranluocapi*, leaving on the left the *Perſian* Tower *Adgdadom Coulaſu*, we came near *Lockman Hakin*, and encamped there all Day, where the *Chakales* entertained us with Muſick: From thence we Marched, and Lodged in a Village, called *Aacube*, under the pleaſant Shade of divers ſpreading Palm-Trees, and ſo proceeded Eaſtward to *Harounia*, where are many pleaſant Gardens, and paſſing by *Adiga* and *Immanisker*, and many other Villages, we were informed the *Arabs* lay in wait for us in the narrow Paſſes, which cauſed us to get 15 Janiſaries well Armed; but we needed them not, meeting with no oppoſition, for we ſafely arrived at *Mendeli*, the utmoſt bounds of the *Turks*, on the Frontiers of *Perſia*: It is a little Town and Caſtle among

among Palm-Trees, made with Mud and Clay, and here we reſted ſome time.

CHAP. VII.

Travels into Perſia, *and a particular Account of the Places, and what occured in the way to* Iſpahan, *the Metropolis of the Kingdom.*

THE famous Kingdom of *Perſia*, ſo much Renowned in Hiſtory, is the Ancienteſt Monarchy now known in the World, having, for the moſt part, had an interrupted Succeſſion of Kings, who have Govern'd that vaſt Region Valliantly, in wiſe Conduct, and much Glory.

It is bounded on the Eaſt with the great River *Indus*, on the South with the main Ocean, on the North with the *Caſpian-Sea*, and on the Weſt with the *Tygris* and *Perſian-Gulf*, and is divided into 11 Provinces, *viz.* *Perſis*, now called *Far*, *Suſiana*, *Caramania*, *Gedroſſo*, *Drangiana*, *Irica*, *Arachoſſa*, *Parapomiſus*, *Seccha*, *Hircania*, and *Ormus*; all very large, and moſt of them Fertile.

On the confines of this Kingdom, we found Men Armed with Bows and Quivers, who ſtopped us, becauſe we were advanced before the Caravan, but being certified that we belonged to it, they let us paſs. Theſe are the King's Officers, ſet on the Roads to examine Strangers, thereby to prevent Spys and Robbers entring into the Country, and are upon moſt Roads, having a pretty good Sallary out of the Treaſury for their diligence; and they get much Money of Paſſengers.

Having paſſed theſe Men, we Travelled ſometimes over Plains, then Hills, and then into Plains again,

again, and through many narrow Paſſages, ſeeing on either Hand a very fruitful Country, and the *Perſian*'s Houſes, many of them being made of Cane, and built ſtraglingly here and there; we often changed the Point, ſometimes North, or Eaſt, or South-Eaſt, as the way led us, till we came by a Village of *Cures*, called *Nian*; the Hills about it were covered with Turpentine, and wild Cheſnut-Trees; the Waters bordered with *Agnus Caſtus*, and Roſe-Laurels. Here the Weather altered, for it was very Cold in compariſon of the Hot Countries we had paſſed before. From hence we paſſed to a Village, called *Chegiafer*, it is compoſed of ſtragling Houſes, of rough Stone, Earth, Cane, and Reeds, covered with green Branches; the former are their Summer-Houſes, and the latter their Winter-Houſes. Their Moſques in this place are built of rough Stone and Earth, and on the way there are many Kervanſerais commodious to Inn at, very fine for the moſt part, being beautified with a kind of black Stone, ſome polliſhed and ſome rough; but paſſing on through a vaſt track of Country, we came to *Hamadan*, to which place the Caravan was bound.

Hamadan is a large Town, but in many places of it void ſpaces, there being many Gardens and Ploughed Fields within the Walls; the Houſes are Stately, yet built of Brick baked in the Sun: It has one fair Street, where they ſell Stuffs and Cloaths ready made; it has many Shops in it, and lies near the *Bezeſtein* which is little, but well compacted; and indeed it is a Town of a pretty Trade, many Caravans coming thither out of *Turkey*, and other parts, to buy and ſell Merchandize, though the Air and Water are unwholſome, and no Wine to be found, ſo that I was very ill there, which made me haſten to be gone to a more agreeable Air. It is Commanded by a Cham, under the King of *Perſia*, who is the ſame there, as a Baſſa in *Turkey*. The *Armenians* have a Church here, but keep it in no good Order: To this and other Chams the King every Year ſends a Rich Veſt, who go out of the

Gate

Gate to receive it, and return with it on, without any other Ceremony, then being attended by the chief Men of the place on Horſeback, and this is uſually Cloth of Gold.

From hence we took Mules with our Lading, for five Abaſis a piece, and one of theſe will carry 600 weight, if need requires it; and ſo taking leave of thoſe of the Caravan that ſtaid to negotiate their Affairs, we ſet forward for *Iſpahan*, the Regal City of *Perſia*, and Metropolis of the Kingdom, in a very ſtrong Troop; for though ſuch care has been taken, that Robberies are leſs frequented in *Perſia* than in *Turkey*, yet it is prudence, however, to be armed againſt Danger, and paſſing early in the Morning through the King's Gate, ſo called, becauſe it looks towards the Royal City: We Traveled over Hills and Downs, the way often altering, from good to bad, till we came to the Town of *Niſchar*, where we refreſhed our ſelves in a ruinous Kervanſerai, on the Ground, where Carpets were ſpread, and drank Water out of a leathern Jugg, called there a Matera: From thence we Marched along the River ſide, and came to lodg at another Village called *Boulouſch Kiſar*, and the next Day encamped under Trees near *Haran*, another Village, where we were warned by our Muliters, to keep a good Guard in the Night time, for they told us, Spys had been amongſt us that Day, to viſit our Arms, and ſee how we were provided; but whether they liked them not, or ſtood in fear, I know not; but certain it is, we had there no diſturbance.

Early in the Morning we marched again, and paſſed by ſeveral pleaſant Villages and Gardens, and foarding the little River *Dizava*, we came to a Town of that Name, lying amongſt Gardens, in a ſpacious Plain, and here we had a plentiful ſhower of Rain, which was the firſt, except a little mizling in our way, ſince my departure from *Aleppo*; and ſo by a long Journey, taking in our way *Sari*, *Debile*, *Mouchaſaba*, *Machat*, *Scheber-Gird*, *Angovan*, *Agatch*, or *Farſang*, *Nichova*, *Fagaſun*, *Ithua*, *Ghulpaigan*,

paigan, *Arbane*, *Deba*, little Villages, and Towns of no great Note, and paſſing by divers Kervanſerais, we came to *Iſpahan*, having ſeen by the way ſeveral Antelopes, a great Beaſt, between a Deer and a Goat, very ſmift in running and climbing the Mountains.

CHAP. XIII.

A Deſcription of Iſpahan, *in what is curious and worthy of Remark in it.*

Iſpahan, as I told you, is the Principality, and ſtands in the Province of *Iraca*, part of the Ancient *Parthia*: Here the Air is Dry, Pleaſant, and more wholſome than in many other parts, which is one main Reaſon the King uſually keeps his Court here. This City was Anciently called, *Hecatompolis*, being Recorded to have had 100 Gates. It is beautified with Walls of a great heighth, built of a red kind of a Marble; and though the Houſes are very Stately, they are built with Brick baked in the Sun, daubed over with a fine Clay, mingled with Straw, and white caſt over with a very fine Plaiſter, which is made of a Stone got out of the Neighbouring Mountains and burned to that whiteneſs, this Plaiſter is the third part of the Charge of building a Houſe; they burn their Tiles indeed in a Kiln, but they are not ſo laſting as ours. There is in this City many very ſtately Moſques, curiouſly adorned: alſo ſundry Pallaces, Seraglios, and Buildings of great Antiquity, but many of the moſt Ancient are Ruinous. The *Perſians* take great delight in their Houſes, keeping them very neat, and adorning them with curious Paintings, Carpets, and Tapeſtry; for in theſe, and their Gardens, ſeem to conſiſt

ſiſt their greateſt Pride. The Walls of this City will take 5 or 6 Hours, at a pretty round pace, on Foot, to compaſs them; becauſe, within them there are ſpacious Gardens, adorned with pleaſant Flowers, and delicious Fruit-Trees, ſerved by Aquaducts that run there in Chanels, watering and Fructifying the ſeveral quarters; and in thoſe Gardens are artificial Mounts, bedded with Flowers and pleaſant Summer-houſes on the top of them, ſhaded with Trees, beſides many ſtately Pallaces; and the quarter where theſe are, is called the New Town. The Suburbs of this City are very large, and the Nobles have Pallaces in it, eſpecially in *Golfa*, lying beyond the River *Sendera*, which is moſtly inhabited by *Armenians*, tranſplanted by *Sheba Abba*, a *Perſian* Sultan, when he utterly razed their Town of that Name in *Armenia*. About this great City are cantoned People of divers other Nations; and there is hardly any Country in *Europe*, *Aſia*, or *Africa*, but there are Natives of them to be found here.

In this City there are many Squares, which render it lovely; the greateſt of which, is that of *Meidan*; it has regular Piazza's, and is about 700 common Paces in length, and near 300 in breadth; it is built round, and the Houſes are all in the form of Porticoes; over them is a ſecond range of Arches, more backward, and theſe ſerve for Galleries and Paſſages, the Houſes being all of an equal heighth, give a curious Proſpect: There is a pleaſant Canal near it, bordered with Palm-Trees, and fed by a Spring, at the end of which is a Bell, ſaid to be taken out of a Nunnery in *Ormus*, with this Inſcription, *Ave* Maria *Gratia plena*. *Hail* Mary *full of Grace*. Hither the Muſicians reſort, there being a Gallery, and ſound ſeveral Inſtruments to divert the People, eſpecially in the Night time, and amongſt others, a Trumpet of Copper, which is 8 Foot long, making a ſtrong hoars ſound, and may be heard in a ſtill Night all over the City, being almoſt in proportion, like a ſpeaking Trumpet,

Paſſing

Paſſing on to the Right, or Weſt ſide, is the Gate of *Aly*, their great Prophet; on the Threſhold of it, which is a round Stone, the *Perſians*, out of a Veneration for the place, will not tread on; and if Malefactors can eſcape into the Court beyond it, or in the King's Stables, or Kitchin, they are in a Sanctuary, none daring to remove them from thence. This Gate is plain, and guarded by Soſies-men of great account there, and many *Perſians* out of Devotion, kneel and kiſs the Threeſhold e'er they paſs over it.

The Street of *Techebarbag*, or the four Gardens, is very large, near 100 Paces broad, and about 2 *Italian* Miles in length: There is a by way into it from the King's Pallace, through narrow Paſſages as it were a Curtain; its watered with a Canal, and adorned with ſhadowing Plan-Trees, being divided by the River *Senderu*, over which is a curious Bridge of Stone, with a Gallery, covered and raiſed above the Level for Foot Paſſengers; its about 300 Paces long, and 20 broad, founded on many Arches, ſome Brick, edged with Free-Stone, and others all of Stone. Over the Gallery there is a Platform, giving a fine Proſpect of the River, and other places, the Gallery ſerves likewiſe for a Horſe-way in the Winter, for then the overflowing of the River fills up the middle of the Bridge, and renders it a kind of a Canal. The Gates of the King's Pallace, and the Front of it, gives a good Proſpect, as do the Moſques, being adorned with Domes, and other Beautifyings; but the Chriſtians are forbidden to enter, under the Penalty of groſs affronts, if not a good Cudgeling, though ſome of them out of curioſity do it in *Perſian* Habits, mingling themſelves with the reſt, and ſo paſs undiſtinguiſhed, amongſt which I took my Lot, and ſaw their curious Cielings, Paintings, Moſaick-Work, fine Marble, and many other curious things. As for their Burying-places they are without the City, and ſo they are in all the Cities of *Perſia*.

They

They have a curious way to ſecure the hot Air in ſultry Weather, *viz.* They have on the tops of their Houſes a Wall about 2 Fathom high, and as much in breadth, to which, at the intervals of other Walls of about a Foot broad, and as high as the firſt, are joyned in right Angels, and theſe are covered with a Roof, ſo that let the Wind blow which way it will, the Air being preſſed between 2 Walls, is driven through a hole in the Roof of the Houſe, and diffuſes cool breathings, but in Winter this hole is ſtopped.

This City is full of Artiſts, and each Company pays the King a certain Sum, which they raiſe again upon all the Crafts, and they are very dextrous in their ſeveral Handicrafts, in which, principally, conſiſts the riches of the Kingdom.

In the King's Court the *Turkiſh* Language is moſtly ſpoke, but much differing from what is ſpoke at *Conſtantinople*; this diſtinguiſhes the Courtiers from the reſt of the People, and gives them certain Authorities and Preeminencies they affect, for they covet Honour above all things, and are profuſe in their Diet, Habit, Houſes, and Equipages, which renders many Noble Families Poor. Their Equipage in Travelling is extraordinary. They ſmoak much Tobacco, and uſually do it through a Veſſel of Water. Their Games are chiefly Cheſs, and Draughts, which they uſe in their Viſits. There are amongſt them a great many Mathematicians, and Aſtrologers, and the King maintains many hundreds of them liberally, though moſt of them appear to be very ignorant: However, theſe are their chief Studies. They have alſo Dreamers among them, who pretend to ſee and foretel things that way.

If a Man has killed another, the Widow, or next Relation, demands the ſatisfaction of his Blood, and if it be not made up for Money, the Murtherer, if taken, is delivered to the Proſecutor, who puts him to Death with great Torments, eſpecially if he falls into the Hands of a Woman, for they are

are more cruel here than the Men; and though they often compound, yet the Relations that are not conſenting to it, will privately revenge the Blood of their Friend, concluding, their Honour ſuffers if the Murtherer eſcapes unpuniſhed.

If any one has been Robbed, he muſt make a preſent to the *Deroga*, who is the ſame in Office, with the Sons, or Sub-Baſſa, in the Turkiſh Government. He ſends his Men abroad to take up ſuſpected Perſons, and puts them to the Rack to make them confeſs, and if the Goods be recovered, he takes a tenth, and ſometimes a ſixth part; but he ſeems to be kinder to the *Franks*, taking only a preſent of them, though may times by concealing the diſcovery, he cheats them of all.

As for the Habits of the *Perſians*, they are more gaudy than ſubſtantial or laſting, generally waring flower'd Silks, or Callicoes, quilted Coats, and the like, having a flowing looſe Garment over a cloſe Coat, or Waſtcoat, with a Girdle; their Drawers down to their Heels, their Stockings are of Cloth, wide and big; their Shoos are like Womens Slippers, with high Heels, peaked at the Toes with a bit of Iron, but ſo ſhort, that moſt part of the Heel hangs over, though they ſtick cloſe, and are covered with Shagreen. They ware Turbans very large, and of divers colours, except the Moulla's, who are Priviledged to wear them white, though the *Perſians* ware Caps with little Turbans about them, and the better ſort have them embroidered with Gold and Silver. They take a Pride to have every piece of their Apparrel of a different colour, and affect neatneſs. As for Rings, the Men, nay, the King himſelf wears Silver ones, but the Women thoſe of Gold, though they cannot give any reaſon for this diſtinction. They paint their Hands, *&c.* with a Dye, called *Hanna*, and will not ſuffer their Beards to grow long, as the *Turks* do, for they clip them to a quarter of an Inch, and take care to have large Muſtachoes.

The

The Women go vailed all to their Eyes, and the Bridegoom never ſees his Bride bare-faced till the Wedding Night. They wear Gold Rings in their Noſes, their Noſtrils being boared for that purpoſe, which is a mark of Servitude, though they take it for a Pride. When they ride, they are placed on a Cammel, in Caſchave, where they are as eaſie as in a Chair. They ſit at their Banquets, and otherways, as the Men do, croſs-legged, on Carpets ſpread on the Ground, or on Cuſhions, and lie on Quilts in their Smocks and Drawers, but have curious fine painted Coverlids over them.

They eat but ſparingly, and wonder the *Franks* can eat Meat twice a Day, they doing it but once, and then they moſtly Boyl or Bake their Meats, not much approving of Roaſtmeat; nor indeed they do not eat much Fleſh, living moſtly on Rice-broth, Herbs, and Fruits. They burn Oyl of *Napta* in their Lampts, and in Winter have Stoves in their Houſes, which keeps them very warm. They Drink Wine, though they are prohibited it, and many times do it over plentifully; which makes them, as other Drunkards, quarrelſom. They have a great many Ice-Houſes curiouſly Vaulted, and deep under ground to keep their Ice in, to cool their Liquors in the hot Seaſons. Many of the *Perſians* take Opium, which intoxicates them in a kind of Drunkenneſs, and they carry it about with them, for having once habituated themſelves to it, they dare not leave it of, for if they do, they have moſt commonly dangerous Sickneſſes, and Death is frequently the attendant.

As for the *Perſian* way of Mourning, it is expreſſed by a Girdle, hanging down with 2 ends before, and croſſing them; but on the Death of a near Relation, the Men rend their Caba, or Veſts, in ſign of Grief, and for the ſpace of 7 Days give Alms; but the Women make doleful howlings or lamentings for ſix, and ſometimes twelve Months, and keep themſelves cloſe, unleſs when they go to viſit the Graves, rehearſing to ſuch as viſit them, the Praiſes

Praises of the Dead, who, with their forced Lamentations, for it is mostly no other, disturb their Neighbours rest, and disorder themselves.

CHAP. XIV.

The King of Persia *an Absolute Monarch; of the Great Officers of his Court, and other Matters.*

THE King of *Persia* has an Absolute or Despotical Power over his Subjects, and anciently, the Kings were in a manner adored by their People: He meddles in matters of Religion, as well as in Secular Affairs, and they begin not their Festivals till they have obtained his leave to keep them; and sometimes, though the Moon has appeared, he sets them back, notwithstanding it is their great Feast of *Ramadan*. His Subjects give him great Reverence and Respect, and scarcely look upon him but with Trembling, paying an implicit Obedience to his Orders. If they swear by his Head, the Oath is more binding to them, than when they swear by the Deity; and without consulting the Law, he is the Arbitrary Judge of their Lives and Fortunes, appointing such Rewards and Punishments as he shall think fit, without controul: And if the greatest Officer of the Court falls under the King's displeasure, all his Friends forsake him, none daring to own him, or subsist him with necessaries, so that he puts to Death whom he pleases, and the neareſt Relations of the party are constrained to seem pleased with his Injustice; nay, sometimes the Sons are commanded to cut off their Fathers Noses, or to kill them, which order they readily obey. These Kings are so jealous of being deposed, by reason of their great Tyranny, that they cause the Males of all

their Female Kindred, to be ſhut up in a Stone Trough, as ſoon as Born, and there ſtarved to Death. So ſoon as a King comes to the Crown, he puts out the Eyes of all his Male Relations, except Sons. He ſometimes changes Wives with his Nobles, giving them his inſtead of their's, and it is not murmured at, eſpecially in publick; and if he likes not his Bargain, will exchange again at pleaſure.

He has a Seraglio of very beautiful Women, who are kept mighty ſtrict, for he is exceeding jealous of them, and it is Death with extream tortures, for any Man, except Eunuches, to be ſeen there; nay, they are prohibited to look on them, though they are Vailed; and when he takes any of them into the Country with him, no Men dare be in the way; and in the Town where he lodges in his Progreſs, all the Men are obliged to leave their Houſes, till the Harum, or Lady is departed; the Eunuches to give them Notice, by crying, the Courouk, and if any ſtay after, they are ſeverely puniſhed: Sometimes there is a Courouk for Proviſion, and then none dares ſell any therein mentioned, but for the King's uſe, and this frequently laſts not above a Week or two. Many times the King lays aſide the ſtifneſs of Majeſty, and is familiar with his Subjects, and Strangers, Drinking and Eating with them in private, but it is dangerous ſpeaking amiſs, leaſt he falls into a Paſſion to the Party's deſtruction, and therefore the leaſt ſaid proves always the beſt; for many have been put to Death for their prating and adviſeing him, which the *Franks* getting Drunk will often attempt to do, when they ſee him ſo familiar with them.

The King gives Audience to Ambaſſadors, but tranſacts no buſineſs with them, for that is left to the Miniſters of State, and is well pleaſed if they drink luſtily with him, and he has a Remembrancer to tell him the next Day, all that he ſays or does when he is Drunk, for then, many times, he gives away Prodigally, as his Rings from his Fingers, and large poſſeſſions, but if he finds it an over-ſight, or too

too great a value for the Perſon, he recalls it again, and requites the Perſon with ſome little Preſent. He has an Eatmad-Doulet to tranſact for him, as his chief Miniſter, who uſually attends his Perſon. He has always great ſtore of Gold in Plate, and a vaſt Treaſure in Jewels; for the Nobles preſent him in their Order, every Spring, with one rich thing or other, and he poſſeſſes the Treaſures and Eſtates of thoſe he puts to Death, unleſs he pleaſes to give it to their Relations; beſides, the Silks are a Royal Manufactury, and he has great Incomes from them.

The Forces of the Kingdom conſiſts in three Bands, or Bodies of Men, *viz*. the *Corſchi*, the *Goulams*, and the *Teufencgi*, the firſt of theſe are deſcended of *Turks*, and Inhabit the Country, living in Tents, for the moſt part, and are able to make a great Body; there are about 25000 of them conſtantly in the King's Pay, having from ten to fifteen Tomans a Year; their General muſt be of their Body, and is called *Corſchi*-Baſſa, who executes the King's Commands in putting any great Man to Death, for they will not ſuffer the Native *Perſians* to do it. Their chief Riches conſiſt in Cattle, which they drive from place to place, and feed in the vaſt Plains and Mountains.

The ſecond Rank of Soldiers are Slaves of many Nations, but chiefly *Georgians*, and about 14000 of them are in the King's Pay, and have from 5 to 8 Tomans a Year; their General is called Koul-ler Agaſi.

Thoſe of the third Rank are ſuch as are raiſed in the Villages, moſtly *Armenian* Renegadoes, and are about 8000, having equal Pay with the laſt mentioned; theſe are of little regard though they March on Horſeback, for in the Battle they alight and Fight on Foot; the other two Bodies Fight on Horſeback, with Bows, Arrows and Harquibuſes.

Beſides theſe, there is a new Militia of Guards that bear Muskets, but theſe rarely go into the Field, unleſs the King be there in Perſon. As for the Court-Officers,

The *Eatmad Doulet* is as the Viſier *Baſha* in *Turkey*; next to him is the *Sedre*, who manages matters of Religion, and has divers under him; theſe makes all Contracts, Teſtaments, and other publick Deeds, Judges of Divorces, *&c.* As for the *Sedre*, he is the High Prieſt of their Law; there are particularly under him a Scheick of the Law, and a Cidi, or Judge, and theſe are Eſtabliſhed in the Principal Towns of *Perſia*, and are nominated by the King, and only depend upon him.

The *Pichnamaz* is an Officer in every Moſque, and in the King's Houſhold he directs the Prayers, and makes the People ſay as he does, and uſe the ſame Jeſtures, always ſtanding before them, that they may not ſee him; there are as many of theſe in *Perſia* as there are Moſques, and they bear a conſiderable Authority. The *Mulas* are of the ſame Tribe, living on the Eccleſiaſtical Revenues, and their Buſineſs is to Teach the Sciences and Law, being properly the *Perſian* Doctors, wearing relute Turbans. The *Nuzar* is the Wardrobe Keeper, and Maſter of the Jewels, and is a kind of a Treaſurer. The *Melitar* is the chief Gentleman of the King's Bed-Chamber, and carrys a Pouch by his ſide full of Hancarchiefs, which he preſents to him as often as he requires them.

The *Deroga* is Judge of Criminal Matters, of the ſecond degree, as Robbery, Quarels, and the like; and under him are the *Aatas*, or Conſtables: There are a great number of other Officers of leſſer Note, whoſe Names and Offices, for Brevities ſake, I am conſtrained to paſs over.

They Hunt the Antelopes with Panthers, brought up to that purpoſe; this Beaſt creeps on its Belly till it comes near the Game, then runs with main force and leaps at it; but if the Panther miſſes at two or three leaps, he purſues no further, but returns creeping back as aſhamed of his being Baffled. They Hawk much in this Country, and the Faulcons brought from *Muſcovy* are of great Value; they bring them up to fly at the Antelope, by feeding them

them on the Noſe of a dead Antelope; then flying at the living ones, they faſten on his Noſe, and pierce him with their Beaks and Tallents, fluttering ſo with their Wings, that blinding his ſight, he ſtops, and the Dogs coming up eaſily, takes him. The King keeps for his Pleaſure a great many Lyons, Elephants, Leopards and Tygars.

To Encourage Chriſtians to turn *Mahometans*, they have a Law that gives them the Eſtates of their Chriſtian Kindred when they dye, though they be in the firſt Degree of Kindred, and the Deceaſed leaves Children; but the Judges for Money have found out a way to invade it, by cauſing them to make it over to ſome *Mahometan* Friend by Teſtament, who poſſeſs it in truſt for the Widow and Children.

They have an odd way to make Women confeſs their Crimes, *viz.* they tye their hands behind them, and then put large live Rats into their Drawers next their Fleſh, which runing up and down, and pinching them, extort Confeſſions from them; for of all Creatures in the World, the Rat is moſt terrible and frightful to them. As for the Men to bring them to a Confeſſion of their Guilt, their fleſh is pulled off with Pinchers from their Legs, Arms and Thighs.

When the Sun is Eclipſed, they run to their Moſques, and ſay a Prayer made for that purpoſe, imploring God to avert heavy Judgments from them, and not to leave them in Darkneſs; at the Eclips of the Moon, they beat their Kettle and Braſs Pans, making a Hediqus din, perſwading themſelves they help her ſo in her Labour to expell the Darkneſs, which upon the going off of the Eclipſe, her motion makes her ſeem to ſtrugle with.

When a Houſe is on Fire, they let it burn out, ſaving however what Goods they can, ſaying, *Providence will ſtop it of it ſelf when it ſees fit*; yet they freely permit others, who are not of their Religion, to endeavour the Extinction of the Flames.

They hold Christians so impure, that if they have touched any Food in the Market, and they know it, they will not buy it; and if one comes into a Bagnio, the Master of it is obliged to wash it again before the *Persians* will enter; yet they own Christ shall come at the last Day, and be *Mahomet*'s Lieutenant, and then all shall embrace the *Mahometan* Profession, for then *Mahomet* will take a Wife, and have a numerous Issue. They hold Marriage in so great Veneration, that they blame him because he never was Married. They keep their Feasts a Day before the *Turks*, for the *Turks* begin not their *Bairam*, or *Easter*, till they see the Moon, and the *Persians* do it according to the Moon's course, being more knowing in the Celestial Sciences. The *Persian* Kings are the more Reverenc'd, because they are held to be of the Race of *Aly*, *Mahomet*'s Successor. The *Persians* are divided into two Sects, one called *Schiai*, the other *Sunni*; the first think it enough to follow the Commands of the Law; but the other do that, and likewise observe Councils.

At their *Little Bairam* they Sacrifice a Camel in *Ispahan*, the King first strikes it with a Javellin, and then the People from the four Quarters of the City Assemble in a tumultuous manner, and hew the poor Beast to pieces, with Swords, Axes, Glaves, and the like, every one striving to get a part of him, so that it often comes to a quarrel, and many are killed; the pieces they get they broil and Eat, accounting it Sacred Meat. In other Cities they kill an Ox in like manner, and in their Houses many Sheep, which they distribute to the Poor.

In their Creed they have an odd imagination concerning Man's dying: They hold that every one must come and die in the place where the Angel took the Earth on which he has been formed, imagining that one of the Celestial Spirits has the care committed to him, of forming the Human Creature, by mingling a little Dust with the Seed of the Parents.

They

They allow liberty of Conscience to all Strangers, and there are at *Ispahan*, a great many *Jews*, *Banians*, *Guebres*, and *Armenians*, who pursue their several Tenents. They have a great many Horses, Mules, and Camels, at all Seasons, and though these things are here set down, many of the Particulars may serve in General for all *Persia*; and therefore, having been detained in this City too long, I fear, from the intended Travels, I now take my leave of it, to proceed on my Journey.

CHAP. XV.

Travels from Ispahan *to* Ormus *and* Bassaru, *in the* Persian *Gulf*; *with an Observation of many Places and Things by the way, of* Persia *in General*, &c.

HAving stayed about 4 Months at *Ispahan*, I resolved to visit *Schiras*, and took the opportunity of a Caravan then setting out; we parted early in the Morning and journied South-east, meeting in our way with large Plains very barren; some of these produced pieces of Salt Earth, made by the Salive part of the Ground, and the working of the Rain on it, and this being refined makes good Salt; leaving these Plains, we encountered with Hills, very difficult to pass, because, though not high, they were Rockey, and very Slippery, so that many of the Mules cast their Burthens, which proved very troublesome to us, and took up much time to reload them; but having passed these Hills, we came to *Mayar*, a ruined Village, which is the beginning, or entrance into the Country of *Fars*, the real Ancient *Persia*, and there we lodged in a Kervanserai, and

going from thence, had, for a good way, a pleasant Country on either side of us, fruitful in Trees and Corn Ground; but meeting with a Chan, and his Harams, or Women, we were forced to fetch a compass to give free Passage, for these great Governors in their Provinces, are as Absolute as a King, and will have their Commands as strictly obeyed.

It will be in a manner endless, to tell you all the Villages, Hills, Plains, Valleys, and Rivers by their Names, that we passed in this long and tedious Journey, therefore, for brevity sake, in a tired condition, I hasten as fast as I can to *Schirars*.

This City is the Metropolis of the Ancient *Persia*; some will have it to be the Ancient *Cyropolis*; the Gates we enter'd at were very Fair and Stately, leading to a broad Street, bordered with Gardens, and at the end of it is a large Stone Bason full of Water to refresh Travellers; further there is a Bridge with 5 Arches, under which runs a small River, and a little beyond a covered Bazar; and though this Street is very fair and long, it is accounted only the Suburb to the City. It lies in a pleasant fertile Plain at the East of it, where is a little Hill covered with Orange and Lemon Trees, intermixed with Cypresses: It lies from North to South, and is about two Hours walk in Circumference. It has many fair Mosques, and a Colledge in it: There are Sallaries allowed to divers Learned Men in the latter, to teach Theology, Philosophy, and Physick, and sometimes there are 4 or 500 Students in the it: The Gates are laid over with blue Earth varnished, shining like Saphires.

The Gardens are exceeding pleasant, adorned with Fruits, Flowers, Canals, Fountains, and Summer-Houses, on little raised Mounts, but many of the Houses are ruinous, for the *Persians* are very Supine in repairing decayed Fabricks.

This is a City of great Trade, in comparison of many others, by reason the *Indian* Merchants bring the rich Commodities of that Country hither. There is a Well of a vast depth and circumference, into which

which they throw Women convicted of Adultery, and there suffer them miserably to Perish; it is cut all out of a hard Rock. A little distant there is a stately Mosque, and in it the Tomb of *Scheik Sadi*, an excellent *Persian* Poet, whom they Honour as a Saint: There is a Well not far from this, and a Stream running under it, full of Fish, which none may take on pain of Death, unless the Dervish who looks after it, connive at them, which he will do for a little present, and keep off all Spies, by pretending there are Women in the Wells, and then the Men run away as from some fearful Monster. One goes down to it by a pair of Stairs.

There is much Glass made in this City; they make a Glass Bottle, called a *Caraba*, that will hold near 30 Quarts, covering them with Cane, or Straw; and here is to be found the best Wine in the Kingdom; they have abundance of Capers, plenty of Rose-Water, and preserve Grapes for the whole Year. A Vizar Governs here as the King's Farmer, and pays yearly 1000 Tomans, amounting to 15000 Crowns.

We stayed here but 2 Days, and then set out for *Lar*, in our way to *Bender*, and passing over Plains, Hills, and Rivers, meeting by the way whole Families of *Arabs* driving their Cattle, we arrived there. This Town is small, and seated on a Rock; it is Commanded by a Chan, who has a stately House, with a Divan; it has a fine Market-place, a Bazars, and a Castle; the last is very strong, and built all of Stone. There are a great many *Jews* inhabit, and drive a considerable Trade here; all the Country about *Lar* is full of Tamarisks that are very large here, and in most parts of *Persia*; the Sparrows being in great numbers, destroy and wast the Fruits of the Earth exceedingly.

Taking a good refreshment in this Town, we took our way through a Country much like the former we had passed, since our leaving *Ispahan*, and by tiresome Journeys came to *Bender-Abassi*, where we no sooner entred but were carried to the Custom-

House,

Houſe and had our Goods ſearched; in our way I ſhould have told you, grew poyſonous Plants, of which a ſtrange ſtory goes, *viz.* That if any Man comes near them in *June* or *July*, when South Winds from the Sea blows upon them, they ſend forth ſuch a poyſonous Vapour, which drawn in with the breath, cauſes the Body all over, to be in a burning heat, and immediately the Party dies, ſo that in thoſe Months the way is little frequented. The *Perſians* affirm this for Truth, and call the plants *Kherzehreb*; but this infection is rather concluded by the Judicious to be in that Wind they call the Burying-Wind.

This Town is very little, govern'd by a Chan, and is of a prodigious Traffick, as being commodiouſly Scituated for Trade; the *Schah Bender* is the chief Cuſtom-Houſe Officer, part of which Cuſtoms belong by right to the *Engliſh*, by a Contract, when they aſſiſted the *Perſian* King in taking *Ormus*, but they have been much defrauded, and reap litlit benefit. It has only one publick Gate, a Bazar, and a Fort to the Sea-ſide, which is a ſquare Platform of about 4 Fathom each Face, and 2 in heighth, there not being above 5 or 6 Port-holes for great Guns; the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* have their Houſes by the Sea-ſide, and the proper Flags of the Nations fixed on Poles on the Tarraſſes, to direct Ships thither.

About 2 Leagues from the main Land is the *Glory of Iſlands*, ſo termed, *viz.* the famed *Ormus*, at the Mouth of the *Perſian* Gulf; it is Southward from the main Land, the Gulf reaching from thence to *Baſſera*, which is in the bottom of it. *Ormus* lies in 27 degrees North Latitude, 180 Leagues from *Baſſora*; it has a Fort that was built by the *Portugueſe*, but taken from them by the great *Schah Abbas*, King of *Perſia*, aſſiſted by the *Engliſh*: The Iſland is no more than 3 Leagues in circumference, and moſtly Rockey, but it has gotten its Fame from the Riches that flowed thither, from *India* and *Perſia*, as being a conſiderable Mart, eſpecially when the *Portugueſe* held

held it. As for the Water and Provisions, they are mostly brought from the main Land, and because there is a deficiency of Springs, they keep rain Water in Cisterns, and little more now is Inhabited beside the Fort, round which the *Persians* have cut a Trench, and let the Sea into it by a Canal, for it stands on the point of the Island, and is the last Province of *Persia* this way. There are great store of Oysters about it, about the bigness of ours, but much harder to open. A League to the South-west is the Island of *Lareca*, it is bigger then *Ormus*, but very Barren, the Ground consisting of a burning Sand; it reaches in length from North-west to South-east: There is little in it except a Fort, which was begun by the *Dutch*, but the *Persians* fearing they would prove ill Neighbours if they fortified it, took it out of their Hands, and finished it.

As for *Persia* in General, it is environed with Mountains and Barren Desarts, which are main Bulworks against the attempts of powerful Enemies. Their is a scarcity of Money, which is one main reason they cannot set a great Army on Foot in so vast a Country: and this, I think, proceeds from the smallness of Trade, for the *Persians* are not very industrious, all of them standing much on points of Honour. There are few or no Fruit-Trees to be found but in Gardens; and in most places the Water is bad, and Wood exceeding scarce in almost all the Provinces. Their chief Manufacture is Silk, and some Stuffs. There is abundance of Liquorice growing almost every where, but little of it set. The Country abounds in Brooks, which render the ways very bad to Travel in Winter, and some Rivers, most of which are in *Mazandara*, whose chief is *Eschref*, and most of these Rivers fall into the *Caspian* Sea.

Here is the greatest store of Wood in the whole Country of *Persia*, but there are a vast number of Serpents and Scorpions, who dying in multitudes, during the hot Season, corrupt and infect the Air, rendering it unwholesome; so that in fine, *Persia* is said

ſaid to be a large Kervanſerai, that ſerves for a Paſſage for the Money and Goods that go out of *Aſia*, *Turkey*, and *Europe* to the *Indies*, and to the Stuffs and Spices returning, of which they have a ſmall Profit.

Deſigning, now I was thus near to viſit the *Indies*, I found ſome of my Company willing to embrace the opportunity of leaving *Ormus*, and embarking for *Baſſora*, at the bottom of the Gulf, and accordingly, with all our Baggage, we ſafely Arrived and Landed there.

CHAP. XVI.

A Brief Account of Æthiopia, *as I received from Mounſieur* du Pau, *who reſided many Years in that Court.*

BEING now at *Baſſora*, preparing for a Voyage to the *Indies*, it will not be amiſs to entertain you with a brief Relation of *Æthiopia*, or the Country of *Abyſſins*, which I had of a *French* Gentleman I found here, who had Travelled in that vaſt Country, and lived ſome time in the Court; and this I the rather ſet down, becauſe I know not whether I ſhall ever Travel into that famed Country, yet I ſhall be as Brief as may be.

He told me it was bounded on the Eaſt by the *Red* Sea, and *Zanguebar*, on the South by *Avouſa*, *Zi-ela*, *Narca*, &c. on the Weſt with *Nubia*, and the Country of *Negros*; on the North with part of *Nubia*, and *Bugia*, and is about 7 Months Travel in Circuit. The King has four Kings Tributary to him, *viz.* The King of *Senner*, who pays him Tribute in Horſes, and lives in an exceſſive hot Country; the King of *Naria*, who pays him Tribute in duſt Gold; the Kings of *Bugia*, and *Dangala*, who

ſends

ſends their Tribute in Stuffs and Slaves. In this Country are Mines, out of which Gold is gotten, and ſent to the Coaſts of *Saffala* and *Guinea*, and theſe Mines are ſhallower than in other Countries. They have likewiſe a great deal of Civet, which is ſcraped from the Teſtacles, or rather from an opening ſlit between or near the Cods of a Civet Cat; this Beaſt is almoſt as big as a midling Grey-hound, with a ſharp Noſe and Head like a Fox; they have Feet, Tail, and Whiskers like a Cat.

When the People of the Country fall out, they go before their Scheiks, who do the good Office to make them Friends again. They anoint their Heads with a ſtrong Oyl, extracted from the Root of an Herb, to keep them from ſwarming with Lice, which they are very ſubject to. The Provinces of *Æthiopia* are, *Gouyan* (where the King has a Viceroy) *Beghandir*, *Amara*, *Dambia*, all very Mountainous; *Damoud*, *Tygre*, and *Barnegas*; alſo other Provinces depending on it, Governed by Princes who are his Vaſſals. The Air is in ſome places temperate, but in *Senner* very hot. In this Kingdom are 24 Tambours, or Viceroys. The Capital City is *Gonthar* in the Province of *Dambia*. The King has 100 Wives, and yet ſo little Jealous, contrary to the *Perſians*, and *Turks*, that he keeps no Eunuchs to look after them, it being counted a Sin in that Country to geld a Man; He is of eaſie acceſs, ſo that the pooreſt have freedom to make their complaints to him, or ſpeak to him what they are minded: He keeps the numerous Children he has by his many Wives, on a Mountain, called *Ouohhni*, 2 days journy from *Gonthar*. On the top of the Mountain there is a pleaſant Cave, where they keep them a Nights, and in the Day time when they are big enough, their Guardians let them play about the Mountains. When the King dies, they chuſe one of the wittieſt and likelieſt of them, and Crown him, not regarding Birth-right; then are the Brothers removed a diſtant place to be kept Priſoners, and his Children as he gets them, ſent to the forementioned Mountain.

The

The Burying-place of the Kings is called *Ayesu*, and is a Grot cut out square in a Rock, there the Aged are laid on one side, and the Younger on the other side: and near it stood a very pretty Church built by the Jesuits, but they diving into Politicks, and State Matters, gave such suspition to the King, that they intended to undermine his Throne, as made him banish them, and demolish their Church and Houses, puting some to Death that lingred behind, as also divers Capuchins, setting a bag of dust-Gold on their Heads, which made the *Abyssins* hunt out, and cut off divers of them, which they sent to the King, and received their promised Reward; so that the poor Fathers were forced to pack up and be gone; however, in the place where the Church stood, there is a place erected which contains a curious Library, stored with Books of divers kinds of Learning, in various Languages. This Country produces very good Wheat and Barley, and is pretty Fruitful in most places where the Desarts are not, for there are very great ones in it, of 3 or 4 Days Journey, which are Wavey, like the Sea, when the Wind blows strong from the South, or South-west, insomuch, that Men and Cattle are buried under Mountains of loose Sand, if they be in the way, where the Desarts lie most exposed to those Hurricanes.

The King in his Progress, always lodges in Tents, the Houses of their chief Nobles being very mean, in respect of those in *Europe*; and the Walls of those of the meaner sort are of Mud and Slime. There are almost Men of all Trades in this Country; they have no Camels here, but store of Mules, Horses, Asses, and Oxen. The People have an ill custom in eating raw Flesh, except the King, who has it dressed, and drinks Wine of the Grape; the rest drink a Liquor made of Millet, or Sarasin-Wheat, and they have a Spirit made of it as strong as Brandy. They have Cloths, Stuffs, and Velvets, Imported by the way of the *Red Sea*, and are Habited like the *Franks* or *Europeans*.

The

The King has a Guard of Harquibusiers. As for their Money, it is pieces of Cloth cut out, going by weight, and little pieces of Salt they cut out on the side of the *Red Sea*. The places where they make it is called *Arbo*. There is amongst them the Nation of the *Gauls*, who have no Fire-Arms, but use in War Sphears and Targets, and often make War with the *Æthiopians*; their Riches consisting in Cattle, and as this Gentleman informed me, there are a great number of different Languages spoken in this Country; and discoursing him about the River *Nile*, which has its rise there, he told me, he had seen the source of it, and that the Spring rises in, and issues out of a Well in a large Plain, shadowed with many Trees, and that well or Spring is called *Ovembromma*.

It rises in the Province, or Little Country of *Ago*, and is a very pleasant Water there; from the Spring it runs Northward, through a long tract of Land, and having passed several Cataracts, or falls, which are very high places, with a terrible roaring, it passes on smoothly till it enters *Ægypt*, and is, as I have elsewhere said, the main support of that Country, for should the *Æthiopian* King turn the Current, *Ægypt* would be little better than a Desart, which the Grand Signior, as many have guessed, fearing, is the cause he molests not the *Æthiopians* with War; and the reason of its over-flowing in *Ægypt*, may be supposed to proceed from the great Rains that fall in *Æthiopia* about that time; for when it is Summer in one place, it is Winter in another. There are but 2 Mountains any thing near the Spring of *Nile*, and those are called the *Jews* Mountains, because they once inhabited them, but growing powerful, were driven out for fear they should Rebel, and compelled to live in the Plains. These Mountains are exceeding high, for in that hot Country they have always Snow on their Tops or Spires.

There is a Generation of *Portugueſe* among the *Æthiopians*, for anciently the Mooriſh King of *Zeila* forcing a King of *Æthiopia* to fly into the Mountains,

tains, he implored aid of the *Portugueſe*, to reſtore him to his Throne, who, with their Fire-Arms ſlew the Mooriſh King, and ſo terrified his Army, that they left the Country; and for this, their Traders on the Coaſt, were put into Offices, and had rich Poſſeſſions beſtowed on them, when ſetling and Marrying with the Native Women, their progeny encreaſed.

The King, and all his People, are a kind of Chriſtians of the Cophliſh Religion, and believe but one Nature in *Jeſus Chriſt*; at the end of 8 Days they Circumciſe their Males, and Baptiſe them 14 Days after, their Patriarch depends on him of *Alexandria*. They ſay Maſs as the *Cophites* do, but their Books are in their own Language. When their Patriarch dies, they ſend to *Alexandria*, and that Patriarch ſends them a fit Perſon.

CHAP. XVII.

The Author's Voyage from Boaſſra, *in the* Perſian *Gulf, to* Eaſt-India, *and Things remarkable in the dangerous Paſſage, particularly Water-Spouts riſing from the Sea, and remarks on them.*

STaying at *Baſſora* for a fair Paſſage to *Eaſt-India*, in a little time it happen'd, as I could wiſh; I found an *Armenian* Ship there of 28 Guns, and moſt of the Mariners were *Banians* of *India*, the reſt *Armenians*, except the Maſter and two more, who were *European* Chriſtians; the Maſter an *Italian*, and the two Mariners *Greeks*: This Ship was *Engliſh* built, and very ſtench, but how it came into their Hands they

they declined to tell me, though I afterward understood, they had bought it for 16000 Roupies when it was in a bad condition, and repairing it they put up *Armenian* Colours, and had 3 Passports to indemnifie them from the *Europeans* that have Factories in *India*. Our Cargo consisted of such things as could not be vended at *Bassora*, as Indico, Cloth, Dates, Chests of Glass, Venetian Looking-Glasses, and a good quantity of Money to buy *Indian* Commodities. I hired a Cabin, and laid in Provision and Water, fearing in so hot a Voyage, the latter might grow scarce; and it was not without precaution, for so it happened. Setting Sail, and getting clear of the Islands, we steered South-west, and had Water, at 5, and 8 Fathom, 2 Men being continually heaving the Lead, least we should fall on Shallows, or Rocks that are under Water near the Shoar.

It will be endless to tell you the often shifting of the Wind, the Calms we had, and the Tackings we made; therefore, let me say with some difficulty we got to the Island of *Carek*, the first place the Ship designed to Traffick at. This Island reaches in length, from South-east to North-west, is very narrow about 3 or 4 leagues in circumference, and 50 Leagues from *Bossara*; it is partly Hills, and partly Plains, yielding Grapes, Barley, Wheat, Dates, and good store of fresh Water, which is a precious commodity in those Countries: There are Wells dug on the top of Rocks 10 or 12 Fathom deep, and have Steps to go down, and from the bottom of these Wells the Water passes, and runs under ground into the Plains. Near to the Wells there is a neat Mosque on the Hill, and on the Island is 150 indifferent Houses, and near it a Pearl Fishery. The King of *Persia* is Lord of it, and great numbers of Boats come to Fish for them in *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*. Here we unladed part of our Goods, but sold little, by reason a Dutchman had been there before and forestalled us, giving out this Ship would not touch there, by which means over and above, he took in a great many Passengers, and Lading for *India*.

Being thus disappointed, we soon weighed Anchor, and steered away South South-east with a very gentle Wind, but were soon becalmed for many Hours; then sprung up an Easterly Wind, and we stood away to the South, and soon had the Isle of *Rischer* on our Larboard, which is very near the main Land, and makes a little Port, called *Bender-Rischer*, which is guarded by a Fort, and standing away, we came up with the Island of *Coucher*, and left it on our Larboard; this Island is large, and indifferent Fruitful; and so Sailing on, passed Cape *Verdestan* at 3 or 4 Leagues distance; and as we Sailed, we had often a faint view of the main Land of *Persia*, especially where it lay high and Mountainous; but before we came to the Island of *Lar* we lost our Long-Boat, which was a great disappointment to us.

Lar is a little Desart Island, bearing nothing but a few Trees at the West North-west end of it; we passed by this, and the next that presented was *Andravia*, a little low Island near the main Land; and passing by we had *Kies*, another Island to the South-West; it is indifferently Inhabited, the Houses lying up and down in it, but Coasting *Paloro*, and leaving Mount *Sennas* on the Main Land to the Larboard, we made *Congo*, a little Town in the Kingdom of *Persia*, 27 Degrees, 15 Minutes North Latitude; it stands on the Sea-side, near the Foot of a black Rock that shelter the Town from the North Winds, and behind there is a white Rock, or Hill, and many such along the Coast. The Town lies from West North-west, to East South-east, and is defended by a little Castle, where 3 pieces of Cannon are mounted, and has a safe Road for Shipping to Ride in, though they are very much tossed in high Winds, about it are 5 Gardens repleniſhed with Fruit-Trees, as Figs, Lemons, Quinces, Oranges, Pears, *&c.* Large Pomgranates, Mellons, and Palm-Trees; there are also the *Indian* Mangoes; they have *Schiras*-Wine, and Brandy, made of Dates; there are near it Hills, producing Sulphur,

Sulphur, which is dug and tranſported to the *Indies*. The Cuſtom is eaſie, half of it belonging to the King af *Portugal* by Agreement, beſide five Horſes the King of *Perſia* preſents him every Year; and to this end there is a *Portugueſe* Agent reſiding in the Town, who has the Colours of that Nation on the Tarras of his Houſe.

Leaving this place after the ſale of ſome Goods, and taking in others, we ſet Sail for *Sindy*, being the firſt Town of *India*, where the River *Indus* diſcharges it ſelf into the Sea; but here we narrowly eſcaped falling into the hands of the *Zinganes*, a ſort of *Indian* Pirates, who lie with their Boats behind the Rocks, to ſurprize Veſſels as they come near them, and if they board a Ship, in the firſt fury, till they have maſtered and ſecured the Prize, they put all to the Sword, and the reſt they Lame, by cutting the Sinew above the Heel, and make them Slaves to keep their Cattle; they ſo uſe them to prevent their running away: Their Arms are only Swords, and Arrows, therefore our watchfulneſs, and the fire of our great Guns made them retire again among the Rocks, ſo ſoon as they prepared to attack us. But having little to do here, we ſet Sail for *Surat*, having now on Board us, by taking in many Paſſengers 116 Souls, and paſſing many ſmall Iſlands, and ſome Promontories came to *Queſchimo*, a large low Iſland, ſo that Sailing by it, one may ſee the Mountains of the main Land over it; it lies from Eaſt to Weſt 20 Leagues in length, but indifferent in breadth. There is a Fort where Ships Anchor at 6 Fathom Water, and this formerly belonged to the *Portugueſe*. On the South Eaſt of it lies *Nabdgion*, or *Pilombo*, a little low Deſart Iſland; and Eaſt of it *Tonbo*, affording little beſide Antelopes and Coneys; but Ships have here the Advantage of many Wells to Water at, yet the entrance is dangerous, becauſe of the Banks that lie under Water about it; the *Portugueſe* were once Maſters of moſt of theſe Iſlands, and exacted Tribute from Ships that Traded there, but their

Strength and Riches decaying at Home, weakned it abroad, ſo that now they have loſt moſt of their footing on the Coaſt of *Perſia*, and the *Indies*.

Sailing from hence, in a little time, we had the Iſle of *Angom* to the North-eaſt, and on the South-eaſt a Port of *Arabia Felix*, called *Julfer*, to which many *Indian* Barks come to buy Dates and Pearl, the latter being fiſhed all along the Coaſt from *Maſcat* to *Babrem*, and bring *European* Money to purchaſe them. The next that ſtood with us were the Iſles of *Salame*; theſe are four Rocks over-againſt Cape *Moſandon*, one of them bigger than the reſt riſing a little into a point, there is a dangerous Chanel paſſing between them, all Rock at the bottom, ſo that many adventuring to paſs it have been caſt away.

Having paſſed theſe, we met with great ſtorms of Hail, accompanied with prodigious Thunders and Lightning, inſomuch, that the Sea ſeemed to be all on Fire. This made us furl our Sails, and though the Air on Head of us was as dark as Night, there appeared a Rainbow on our Starboard.

Upon the breaking of this Storm prodigious Spouts began to riſe out of the Sea to our Larboard, and at length, encreaſed almoſt on all ſides of us, ſome being very near, which put us into a conſiderable fright, leaſt falling on our Ship they ſhould ſink it, they being extraordinary large, inſomuch, that all affirmed they had not ſeen the like in their Lives, ſo that all Hands were employed to ſecure the Ship as well as might be, from the threatning danger; for we as good as gave our ſelves to be loſt; however, truſting in the Creator of all things, and taking to my ſelf more Courage than ordinary, I took a view of theſe watery Prodigies: The firſt that appeared was about a Musket-ſhot from us, as we were ſteering North-eaſt, and before it roſe, the Water in that place boiled up prodigiouſly, more than a Foot above the ſurface of the Sea, foaming and looking whitiſh, and over it ſomething repreſenting a black Smoak (which the *Banians* fooliſhly

ſaid

ſaid was the Devil ſucking up Water to drown them.) This made a hurrying noiſe like a Torrent running in a Valley, mixed with a hiſſing like that of Serpents, or Gees. A little after appeared a dark puff of ſteem, this ſeemed to be a Pipe as big as ones Finger, the noiſe continuing, this tapered as it were up to the Clouds, and the light put it out of our ſight, ſo that we knew that Spout was ſpent; but then there was another to the Southward of us, which began in the ſame manner as the former, ſoon after another to the Weſtward, and another to the ſide of the ſecond, the moſt remote of the three; and all theſe appeared like ſo many bundles of Straw, a Foot and an half, or two Foot above the ſurface of the Water, ſmoaking to appearance exceedingly, making the ſame noiſe as the firſt. A little while after I perceived ſo many Pipes reaching down from the Clouds upon theſe Riſings, and every one of them had a large end joyning to the Cloud, widening like the end of a Trumpet, and the lower end reſembled the Teat, or Dug of a Beaſt, ſtretched perpendicularly down by the force of ſome weight. Theſe Pipes appeared to be of a paleiſh White, which I conjecture was the Water in them, for no doubt they were formed before they drew it up, and being emptied diſappeared; for though the Pipes deſcended ſmall, ſwelled with the Water they grew larger, to the thickneſs of a Man's Arm, or more.

Theſe Spouts are dangerous things, for falling on a Ship they entangle the Sails, and lift her up, then leting her fall again ſink her if ſhe be ſmall, but if the Ship be too heavy to be lifted, they ſplit the Sails, and emptying a vaſt quantity of Water into her with a violent force, ſink her, and thus I believe Ships have been loſt, Sailing in thoſe, and other Seas where Spouts are, and ſo going down in a Minute or two, have never been heard of. Some that were on Board brought a large black handled Knife, to cut the Spouts at a diſtance. which Superſtitious Fancy is thus put in practice: One of the Ships company kneels down by the Main-Maſt,

and holding in one Hand a Knife with a black handle, he Reads the Gospel of St. *John*, and when he comes to these Words, *viz. The Word was made Flesh, and dwells in us*, he turns to the Spout and cuts the Air a thwart, and then they hold the Spout, though at a great distance, is cut, and lets down all its Water with a great noise. But the Master looking on this silly fruitless Fancy as a piece of Conjuration, would not let it be put in practice. In the *Mediterranean* they shoot Cross bar shot at them, which hitting, is more probable of the two to cut; however, these spent themselves without doing us any harm; and at length, through infinite Mercy, we weathered the Storm which raged furiously all the time, and kept on our Course, having the main Land of *Arabia* on our Starboard, and on our Larboard that part of *Persia* called *Marsan*, which bore South-east of us, and we made particularly one Hill of Land shaped like a Sugar Loaf; and here, in *November*, *December*, and *January*, the East Winds commonly Reign, and therefore to go from *Persia* to *India* in a short time, the best Season is *March*, *April*, and the beginning of *May*, for then the *Mousson*, or Trading Wind blows. However, we held on with the help of the Current, which from the end of *July* to *January* sets towards *Ormus* from *India*, and from *January* till *July* from *Ormus* towards *India*.

In our Passage another Storm arising, we saw 3 new Spouts, but they were at too great a distance from us to apprehend much dangar. In our way, off *Bembaceca*, we overtook 3 Ships bound to *Surat*, as we were, but proving slow Sailers, the Master would not stay for them, but resolved to make the best of his way, so contrary to the mind of the Mate, we left them to Sail at their leisure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Arrixal at Surat; *a diſcription of that Town; the manner of the People; Travels into the* Indian *Provinces, with Obſervations of what is Rare and Remarkable in the vaſt Dominion of the* Great Mogul.

AFter many dangers in Coaſting *Perſia*, and a great part of *Arabia*, we knew by the Snakes we ſaw at Sea, a kind of ſpungy Froth floating in great abundance on the Water, which pricks, and makes the Hands of thoſe that touch it burn, that we were not far from the main Land of *India*; we kept Sailing by many ſmall Iſlands, of which thoſe Seas are plenty, till we made *Daman*, a Town belonging to the *Portugueſes*, who have ſtrengthened it with a conſiderable Fort: It lies in 20 Degrees North Latitude. From this Town to Cape *Comorin* is a range of very high Hills along the Coaſt, yet this Town has no other Harbour but a little Chanel which remains almoſt dry when the Tide is out. Here refreſhing our ſelves, we took the advantage of an Eaſterly Gale, and weighing Anchor bore away Northward, having no more than five Fathom and an half Water in an Hours Sailing; but then coming into deeper Water we Sailed more boldly, and came up with the Bar of *Surat*, in 6 Fathom and an half Water: Here the Cuſtom-houſe-Officers came aboard us, and narrowly ſearch'd and viewed every thing they had an opportunity to ſee; after that Boats came to fetch off the Paſſengers and their Goods, and we were had to the Cuſtom-houſe, and again ſearched in a very odd manner. The

entrance for Veſſels of Burthen is very difficult, and we were a-ground twice before the Tide could carry us in: we paſſed then by the Caſtle of *Surat* on our Right Hand, and dropped our Anchor before the Cuſtom-Houſe.

Thus being happily at Land, after a two Months troubleſome Voyage, I and others reſted and refreſhed our ſelves. The Bar, ſo called, by reaſon of Sands, and is 6 French Leagues or more from *Surat*, yet their Ships of great Burthrn muſt unload before they can come up the River.

Being impatient to ſee *Surat*, of which I had heard ſo much diſcourſe at home. I went in a Boat on the River with divers other Paſſengers, but by reaſon of the Stream being againſt us, we were a conſiderable time e'er we reached the Town; and the Cuſtom-houſe being open, upon the Signal given we came on Shoar, without which we might not do it: then paſſing a large Court, we entered into a Hall, where the Cuſtomer waited to have us ſearched.

The manner of their ſearching, as I ſaid, is odd, and very ſtrict, they making their ſearch from Head to Foot, feeling your Nakedneſs in every part, looking alſo into your Mouth, as if they would tell you your Age by your Teeth; and the Waiter demands of every Paſſenger, as his Fee, an Abaſſy, which is worth about 18 *d.* and the Bark has half a Roupe, which is about 14 *d.* a Head for every Paſſenger. If they find one ſmugling in the leaſt, he is fined ſeverely, if not Caved. All the Baggage is brought into the Cuſtom-houſe to be ſearched, and when that is done, every one is called in his turn, to pay, and take them away for Money; they take two and an half *per Cent.* for Merchants Goods, of Chriſtians four, and of the *Banians* five *per Cent.*

India is a very large Country, of which I ſhall ſay ſomething, before I enter upon particulars. It is bounded on the Weſt with the River *Indus*, on the Eaſt with *China*, on the North with *Tartary*, on the

the South with the Ocean, and is properly divided into two diviſions, *viz.* *India intra Gangem*, and *India extra Gangem*; the firſt contains nine Kingdoms, *viz.* *Narſinga*, *Malavar*, *Ballaſia*, *Cambaia*, *Mandao*, *Bengala*, *Ariſtan*, *Comora*, and *Dellia*. The ſecond, ſeven, *viz.* *Macine*, *Aracan*, *Couchin-Chian*, *Baram*, *Siam*, *Pegue*, *Malavar*. The whole Country ſeems to take its denomination from the vaſt River *Indus*, which runs 1000 Miles e'er it falls into the Sea; and the Empire of the Great Mogul is the Principle, many of the others being petty Kings, ſome of them paying him Tribute, and his Territories are uſually called the *Moguliſtan*. The preſent Great Mogul is held to deſcend directly from the line of *Tamarlan* the *Tartar*, whoſe Succeſſors ſetled in the *Indies*, and took to themſelves the Name of *Moguls*, to diſtinguiſh them from thoſe to whom that Prince left *Zagalay*, *Perſia*, *Coraſſau*, with other Countries to be Govern'd after him; and they concluding this Name would contribute to the Glory of the Family, becauſe the People would be the more eaſily perſwaded they are of the Race of the great *Ginguiſcan*, the firſt Emperour of the Ancient *Moguls*. It has been ſucceſſively maintained for many Generations, and is a mighty Empire eſtabliſhed in *India*.

As for *Mogul*, is was anciently the Name of a mighty People Inhabiting a Country at the extreamity of East-*Tartary*, inclining towards the North, which others have called *Mongul* and *Mongal*, ſome *Moguliſtan*, where *Ginguiſcan* was Born, and that Emperour reduced it wholly under his Obedience. before he proceeded to the Conqueſt of the reſt of *Aſia*; and both himſelf and Subjects were called *Moguls*. The Great Mogul is ſaid to carry 300000 Horſe into the Field with him when he makes War, beſide a conſiderable Army of Foot; yet the moſt knowing *Indians* ſay, though he pays ſo many, there is not above half of them in Arms at once. The great Men that Command, uſually, for their own advantage, it being the moſt they have to live on,

double

double the Muſter-Roll. He has in his Dominions 20 Provinces or Governments, and thoſe that have made them more, have miſtaken, by making two of one.

The true bounds of his Empire to the Weſt, are, *Macram*, or *Sinde*, and *Candabar*: On the Eaſt it reaches to the River *Ganges*; on the South it is limitted by the Gulf of *Bengala*, the great Sea, and *Decan*; on the North by a part of *Tartary*. It extends from Eaſt to Weſt, above 400 Leagues, and from North to South 500; and this vaſt ſpace, ſome Mountains and Deſarts excepted, is very much repleniſhed with Cities, Towns, Caſtles, Boroughs, and pleaſant Villages; and the Country about them very fruitful in Corn, Rice, Fruits, *&c.*

In the Province of *Guzerat*, in this Empire, is the Town of *Surat*, of which I have ſpoke ſomething already. It lies in 22 Degrees 7 Minutes North Latitude, watered by the River *Tapty*. The Walls were formerly of Earth, but they are framing now of Brick, 2 Fathom and an half thick, and of the ſame heighth, being cautioned ſo to do for its better defence, upon its being plundered by *Raja Savegi*, who made himſelf Maſter of great Riches, though he took not the Caſtle, nor was able to force the Factories of the *Europeans*, who had Fortified them with Cannon, and making a ſtout defence, ſaved their Goods from the ſpoil. This *Raja* had his Government in the Mountains, and did great miſchiefs in *India*; though *Aurenzeb*, the Mogul, or Emperor, did all he could to prevent it.

In building the new Wall, a great many Houſes are left out of the Town, eſpecially thoſe built of Cane. When the Mouſſon, or Monſon, a Wind that ſerves for Trade of Shiping, blows, the Town is full of People, ſo that 'tis difficult to get any Lodging: and this is in *January*, *February*, *March*, part of *April*, and ſometimes all that Month.

It is Inhabited by *Indians*, *Perſians*, *Arabians*, *Armenians*, *Turks*, *European* Chriſtians, and ſome few other Nations; though the proper Inhabitants are divided

divided into 3 Orders; the first of these include the *Indian Moors*, and others of the *Mahometan* Religion; the second are *Gentils*, or Heathens, who adore Idols, the third are the *Parsis*, who are likewise called *Guares*, or *Artechpireſt*, adorers of Fire, professing the Religion of the ancient *Persians*; and these retired into *India*, when *Caylif Oman* reduced *Persia* under the Power of the *Mahometans*. The *Banians* are here the richeſt Merchants, some of them being held to be worth 8 Millions of Crowns. The *Dutch* particularly, among other *Europeans*, have driven a great Trade here, as did the *Engliſh*, and these had Houſes aſſigned them for their Factories, called Lodges, very neatly built.

The Caſtle is built on the ſide of the River *Tapty*, and is a Fort of moderate bigneſs, and of good ſtrength; it ſtands at the South end of the Town, and defends the Entry againſt thoſe that would attack it. It is ſquare, and flanked at each corner with large Towers: The Ditches on 3 ſides are filled with the Sea Water, and the 4th which is on the Weſt, is waſhed by the River. In this Caſtle the Mogul's Revenues gathered in the Province are kept, and never ſent to Court without Order.

On the Weſt ſide there is a ſtately Gate to enter at, which is in the *Bazar* or *Meiden*, and this Caſtle has a particular Governor, and the Town has another. The Houſes of the Rich are but meanly built, of Timber, Brick, Lime, and Tiles, and moſt of these being fetched a great way renders building very dear, by reaſon there is no Stone in this Province: They make their Laths of Bambous Cane, and they chuſe, by reaſon of the exceſſive heat of the Sun, which drys and craks ſo faſt, to build when it Rains, rather than in dry weather. As for the Houſes of the ordinary ſort they are made of Cane, and covered with Palm branches. The Streets are large and even, but not Paved. They ſpare the Oxen here to Till the Land, and carry Burthens, feeding on Cow-Beef, eſpecially for the moſt part; they have good Mutton, and abundance

of

of Poultry, and eat with their Meats the Oyl of *Cnicus Sylveſtris*, or wild Saffron, the beſt in the *Indies*; alſo that of *Seſamum*, which is common, but not ſo good. They have white and red Grapes there, but they make an eager and unpleaſant Wine, becauſe the heat is ſo exceſſive they have not deliberation enough to ripen; nor is the ſtrong Waters drunk there much better; it is made of *Jagre*, a a kind of courſe black Sugar diſſolved in Water, with the bruiſed Bark of the Baboul-Tree, and ſo Diſtilled.

They make ſtrong Water likewiſe of Tary, and draw a Brandy from Rice, Sugar and Dates, which, however, is but very ſorry ſtuff, and kills many of the *Europeans*, who coming a long Voyage, too ſuddenly faſten on thoſe Liquors and drink intemperately. They infuſe theſe ingredients likewiſe in Water, and by ſetting them in the Sun make Vinegar.

At *Surat* are ſold all ſorts of Stuffs and Cotten Cloth that are made in the *Indies*, likewiſe a great many *European* Commodities, and thoſe of *China*, as Purceline, Cabinets, and Coffers, adorned with Turquois, Agats, Cornelian, Ivory, and all ſorts of Embelliſhments; here are Diamonds, Rubies, Pearls, and moſt ſort of precious Stones that are found in the Eaſtern Country; alſo Amber, Musk, Myrrh, Frankincenſe, Manna, Sal Armoniac, Lac, Indico, Quick-ſilver; the Root Rænus for Dying Red, and all ſorts of Spices and Fruits that are to be found in the *Indies*, and other Countries of *Levant*; and here Merchants buy up Drugs to tranſport into all parts of the World; ſo that this Town, though not large, may be ſaid to be the Emporium of the *Indies*.

Having pretty well viewed this place, and taken ſuch things as I was informed were neceſſary for ſuch hot Countries as remained for me to Travel in, and conſidering *Amedabad* was the Chief City of *Guzerat*, I directed my Journey to take a view of it. This Province, a few Ages ſince was an entire Kingdom,

dom, Govern'd by *Mudafer*, a young Prince, who by the advice of his Guardian, called in *Mogul Echbar*, to make his party good againſt the great Men who were troubleſom to him; but the Mogul getting ſtrong footing, impriſoned him and his Guardian, where they died miſerably, and ſeized the Kingdom, annexing it as a Province to his Empire, and it is the pleaſanteſt of *Indoſtan*, though not the largeſt, for it is well watered with the Rivers *Nardabad* and *Tapty*, with ſome other Rivers of leſſer Note, ſo that the Fields look green all the Year, by reaſon of the Corn and Rice that cover them, and the various kinds of Trees that continually bear Bloſſoms and Fruit.

Setting out from *Surat*, with ſome others in company, I Travelled Northward, and 2 Hours after croſſed the *Tapty* in a Ferry, as I did the River *Kim*, near the Town of *Beriao*, and came to *Oucliſſer*, and paſſing the River *Nardabad*, arrived at *Baroche*, diſtant from *Surat*, and the Sea, about 10 French Leagues, or 20 *Indian* Coſſes, which is a meaſure amongſt them of about half a League. This Town lies about 22 Degrees North Latitude; it has a large ſquare Fortreſs ſtanding on a Hill, and the Town lies upon the ſide, near the Foot of it, looking towards the River *Nardabad*, encompaſſed with a Stone Wall 2 Fathom high, flanked with Towers between 30 and 35 paces diſtant one from another, and is the ſtrongeſt in the Province. The *Bazar*, or Market-place is a large Street at the Foot of the Hill, where are made the Cotton Stuffs, called Baftas. Here are Moſques and Temples of the Heathens, with Pagods or Idols in them, to whoſe ſenſeleſs Shrines they pay devout Adoration. Here are plenty of Agats, and alſo a bundance of Peacocks.

Leaving this place, I continued my Journey Northward, and came to the little Town of *Sourban*, 7 Leagues from *Baroche*, and croſſing the Brook *Dader*, and ſeveral little Villages, I entered *Debea*, where a barbarous ſort of People Inhabit, who, a few Years ſince fed on Man's Fleſh, ſelling it publickly

lickly at their Shambles, ſo that Strangers always go armed here for fear of being robbed and miſchief-ed by them, which made us make but a ſhort ſtay; but paſſing the Lake, or River *May*, we came to *Peſnad*, about 7 Leagues from *Debea*, and ſaw in our way 2 great *Tanqueze*, and a number of Monkies, who came and croſſed us in the Road, fearleſs of our ſhouts, but rather mockingly anſwered us again, crying *Pou*, *Pou*; the Tanquiez are ſtanding Ponds, or reſervatories for Rain Water, paved at the bottom, and kept very choicely. Leaving this place I Travelled with my Company to *Souſentra*, and ſo to *Mader*, which place is very Woody, and there the Monkies were in greater numbers than before, in the Fields, Roads, and on the Trees; and Travelling 5 Leagues from this place, I came to *Gilbag*, where I met a great many *Collies*, a People of the caſt off *Gentiles*, who wander up and down, and have no fixed Habitation; their chief buſineſs being to pick the Cotton Wooll. In *Gilbag* there is a handſom Garden that belongs to the Mogul, and in it are kept a number of Peacocks; it is finely Watered, and well Planted with Fruit-Trees, and from hence it is two Leagues to *Amedabad*, to which I went the next Morning.

This, as I ſaid, is the chief City of the Province, and is about 86 Coſſes, or half French Leagues from *Surat*, and the Sea. It is Govern'd by an *Omra*, or *Indian* Lord, under the Mogul: It lies 23 Degrees and ſome Minutes North Latitude, on a lovely Plain, and is watered by the River *Sabremetty*, which when the Rains fall, much overflows the Plains. There are large Gardens, encloſed with fine Brick Walls; theſe Gardens have reſervatories for Water, and each of them a fine Pavillon at the entrance, and at the end of moſt of them there are convenient Lodgings. The Houſes in the Suburbs are ſcattering, and many ancient Tombs are to be ſeen about the City, into which you enter by a ſtraight large Street; the Walls are pretty ſtrong, compoſed of Stone and Brick, flanked with great round Towers

ers and Battlements. It is about a League and an half in length, and has 12 Gates, which are ſtrictly watched, for fear of a ſurprize from the *Raja*, of *Bandour*, whoſe Territories are near, but almoſt in inacceſſible Mountains, which gives him an opportunity to make inroads thereabouts, and ſafely to retire with much Booty, not regarding the Mogul. In this City are many curious Arches, and large Squares. There is a Kervanſerai in the *Meidan*, furniſhed with curious Balcony-Lodgings, ſupported with Pillars; and the King has a Pallace in this City of curious Work, where the Muſicians reſort to Play on their Inſtruments Morning, Noon, Evening, and Midnight, for which they have a Sallary allowed them; in the Apartments there are ſeveral Ornaments of Folages covered Gold; there is the *Juma*, *Meſgid*, or *Fridays*, whither on that Day the People all Flock; it is very beautiful, and is the faireſt of all others, though there are many more; on the outſide of each Gate is a fine Steeple, with a Balcony, where the *Mueſins*, or Bedles, with their thundering Voices call the People to the Moſque, for in this Country they have no Bells; and when they repair hither they appear very devout, for I ſaw above 400 *Faquirs* who held their Arms croſs behind their Heads without ſtirring all the Prayer-time. I viſited another Moſque which had been a Pagod Temple, before *Aureng-Zebe* cauſed a Cow to be killed in it, which cauſed the *Gentiles* to forſake it. It has abundance of Figures of naked Women in it, ſitting after the Oriental faſhion, as alſo, of Men, Beaſts, and Monſterous Creatures; but they are ſomewhat disfigured by their Noſes being cut off, which *Aureng-Zebe* cauſed to be done out of a pretended Zeal, which raiſed him to the Throne over the Heads of his Father and two elder Brothers.

In this City is the place where the famed Magician was Buried, whom many of the *Indians* hold for a great Saint, and viſit his Tomb with great Devotion: It is a ſquare pile of Building, having on each ſide ſeveral little Domes ſetting off a great one

in

the middle. The entry into it is by 7 Ports that take up the whole Front; the Pavings is Marble, the Doors are of the ſame, inlaid with Chriſtal and Mother-Pearle: The Tomb is like a bed, covered with Cloth of Gold, and over it 7 Canopies of different coloured Silk, one higher than another: The Pavement is uſually ſtrowed with white Flowers, which the devout *Mahometans* bring when they come to ſay their Prayers at the Tomb.

Near to the Burying-place of the Ancient Kings of *Guzerat*, which is a very fine Building, and curious Arched Vaults under it, where the Aſhes of the Dead are in Urns, is the Sepulcher of a Cow, under a Dome, ſtanding on 6 Pillars, but either they knew not, or declined to tell me the reaſon why ſhe was buried there, but at another place I heard, one of their Kings was driven out by the People, who flying to the Mountains, was there ſupported by the Cow's Milk till he was recalled, whereupon dying ſoon after, he left a Pention to keep this Cow ſo long as ſhe ſhould live, with Commands, that ſhe ſhould be Buried in this manner when ſhe Died; and the People on certain Days go to the Sepulchers of their Kings to bewail their loſs.

The next thing I viſited, was a famed Well, 8 Story deſcending, every Story ſupported with Arches and Pillars; it is 4 Fathom broad, and about 24 long; very lightſome, having in it curious Springs. They ſay it was built by a King's Nurſe, and coſt 20 Millions of Roupies, but I believe a great deal leſs finiſhed it.

Though ſome may think it ſtrange, and ſcruple crediting it, yet certain it is, here the Gentile *Indians* have an Hoſpial for ſick Beaſts, and another for Birds, which they feed and look after till they are well, and then they ſell them to their own Sect, but not *Mahometans*, whom they count Cruel, becauſe they miſ-uſe and kill Creatures, and often they buy them out of their Hands at dear rates, purely out of a charitable compaſſion to ſave the poor Creatures Life, for they hold it a Sin to kill any thing.

thing. Near this City are large Forreſts, in which they take Panthers, and the Governor has thoſe that teach them to be tame and tractable, and then he ſends them to the King as preſents to divert him in Hunting. I ſaw likewiſe a Beaſt there that had the Head of a Coney, the Ears, Eyes, and Teeth of a Hare, the Muzzle round and Fleſh-coloured, the Tail of a Squirrel, in the fore Feet it had four Fingers, and a Claw in the place of the Fiſt; the hinder Feet had 5 Toes, each of which were long as well as the Claws; the ſoles of its Feet flat, and like an Apes, of a Fleſh colour; its Hair on the ſides, long, courſe, and of a dark red, but greyiſh on the Belly, like the Wool of a Hair: and from Head to Rump, about a Foot and an half long; few could tell what to make of it; they told me it was brought from *Moca*, yet, probably, it was no other than a Squirril. The Commodities moſtly traded for here are, Velvets, Skins, Taffatas, Tapeſtries, with Gold, Silk, and Woollen Grounds, Cotton, Cloth, Indico dried and preſerved, Ginger, Sugar, Cinamon, Tamarines, Mirabalans, Cumin, Lac, Saltpetre, Opium, Honey, and ſome Schites, or painted Cloth.

Cambay being in this Province, by the Sea, I reſolved to viſit it, but on my way found little worth mentioning. Let it ſuffice then that I arrived there. This Town lies at the bottom of a Gulf of the ſame Name, which is very dangerous for large Veſſels to come in, by reaſon of the Flats, and banks of Sand, and for thoſe of leſs force by reaſon the *Malabar* Pirates lie ſheltering under the Rocks to ſurprize them. This Town is much larger than *Surat*, tho' not near ſo Populous, for the cauſes I mentioned. The Walls are Brick, about 4 Fathom high, with Towers at certain diſtances. The Streets are large, and have all Gates at the ends of them which are kept cloſe ſhut at Night. The Houſes are very high, built of Bricks baked in the Sun, and the Shops are ſtored with Aromatick Perfumes, Spices, Silks, Stuffs Ivory, Bracelets, Agat, Cups, Caphlets, and Rings: The Agats are got out of a Quarry, near

a Village called *Nimodra*, about 4 Leagues from from *Cambaya*. Moſt part of the Inhabitants are *Banians* and *Raſpouts*.

The Caſtle where the Governor reſides is large, but not beautiful. In this Town there are ſo many Monkies, that ſometimes the Houſes are covered over with them, as it were a Dovecot, and theſe miſchievous Creatures never fail to hurt one or other in the Streets, if they can find any thing to throw at them. There are many Gardens about this Town, and a ſtately Marble Tomb is to be ſeen very ancient, and the Building about it ſuitable, adorned with Porphery Pillars, *&c.* There are the Ruins of other old Tombs to be ſeen near it, held to be thoſe of Ancient Kings. The Suburbs are near as big as the Town, and great ſtore of Indico is made there. As one Travels from this place there is great danger of Robbers who lie concealed, and by a ſlight throw a nooſe about a Man's Neck, pull him down, and ſtrangle him in a trice, and ſo rifle him, and therefore it is proper to go in a good company, though there is a cuſtom to carry a *Techeron* Man and Woman with them, who declare to the Robbers, that the Party is under their Protection, and if they injure them, the Man proteſts to cut his own Throat, and the Woman ſhows them a Raiſor, with which ſhe vows to cut off her Breaſt, and this they ſay, has often deter'd the Thieves from offering violence to Travellers, becauſe the Heathens who are moſtly the Robbers, look on it as a horrid and unpardonable Crime to be guilty of the Death of a *Techeron*, becauſe, ever after, the Party who is the cauſe of it is hated by his Caſt, and turned out of the Tribe, and continually upbraided with the Death of a *Gentil*, though I could not underſtand this takes now adays, for few of them will kill themſelves, though they proteſt it, but have a cunning fetch to excuſe it, alledging, after they have whiſpered with the Robbers, they have compounded, and ſo get Money out of Chriſtians, which no doubt they ſnack between them.

This

This Province has several other considerable Towns, as *Goga*, on the other side the Gulf, between 20 and 30 Leagues from *Cambaye*, *Patan* lying more Southward, towards the great Sea, where many Silks and Stuffs are made: It is defended by a Fort, and has a Fine Mosque in it, which was formerly an Idol Temple.

Diu, belonging to the *Portugueses*, fortified with 3 Castles, at the Siege of which, an Army sent by the last Sultan but one of *Ægypt*, named *Campson Gaurus*, perished, and Sultan *Solyman* the great Emperor of the *Turks*, sending another Army under *Solyman* Bassa, which was joyned by a vast power of *Indians*; the valliant *Portuguese* Governor named *Siveira*, so well defended it, that after a long Battery, they were forced to raise the Siege, and leave their Tents, Artillery, and Ammunition, with 1000 wounded Men in their Camp, though the *Turks* in their Passage, had seized *Aden* by Treachery, and strangled the King of that place. At *Diu* is made the Stone *Cobra*, so famous for antedoting the biting or stinging of Serpents; it is compoled of the Ashes of a burnt Root, mingled with a kind of an Earth they get under the Rocks, and making these into a Paste, they form the Stone of it; then they prick the Wound, and letting a little Blood out, they apply the Stone, leaving it till it falls off of it self; it has the same effect on Wounds made by Poyson'd Weapons, and after that put into Womans, or Cows Milk, it leaves the Poyson it has sucked in, and if it be not so used, it will burst.

There are two other Towns of Note in this Province, *viz.* *Nariad*, and *Mamadebad*, where they make store of Stuffs; the latter furnishing this, and adjacent Provinces, with Cotton Thread. The income of this Province to the Mogul's Treasury is accounted Twenty millions and five hundred thousand French Livres yearly.

Travelling on, I entred the Province of *Agra*, which I reckoned the largest in the Mogul's Ter-

ritories; *Agra*, which gives it the Name is the Capital Town in it. It is distant from *Surat* 210 Leagues, and is seated on the River *Gemna*, in 28 Degrees and an half, North Latitude. The River has its source in the Mountains to the North of *Dehly*, and increasing by the way, it is here considerable, and passing through large Countries, empties it self into the great River *Ganges*, at the Town of *Halbas*.

Mogul *Ecbar* made *Agra* a City, it being before but a Borough, and establishing the Seat of his Empire there, called it *Ecbar Abad*, or the Habitation of *Ecbar*, joyning several Villages by other Buildings to enlarge it: He fortified it very well with a Castle and Walls of great heighth and strength, and had his Pallace in the Castle, containing 3 Courts with Porches, adorned with Gilding and Painting; nay, some pieces plated with Massy Gold. There are many stately Sepulchers, Baths, Pillars, and other things of great Antiquity. And here *Aureng Zebe* Imprisoned *Cha-Gehan*, his Father, when he mounted to the Throne, and in that confinement he died, who has a little Sepulcher erected to his Memory. There are in *Agra* a great many Christian Families; some reckon 5000, but the computation is not agreed on. The *Dutch* hold a Factory in this Town, and for the greater encouragement of Travellers, the *Foursdar*, an Officer in the nature of a Sheriff, is obliged to make restitution to those that are Robbed, and this is punctually observed in all, or most of the Provinces.

Here are Elephants, Antelopes, Leopards, and other Beasts that they use in their Games for fighting. I saw here Green Pidgeons, and the *Indians* have a cunning way to catch them in the Water, for they go into the Rivers Naked, and keep their Bodies under Water, their Heads only remaining above, which is covered with a Cap of Feathers in the Form of a Water-Fowl, so without scaring them, draw them under Water by the Legs.

In the Mountains, about 5 days Journey from hence, they Hunt, and take store of *Merovers*, or wild

wild Cows, of which Hunting they make great advantage. Their Pictures in *Agra* are pretty well done, but mostly in bandy Postures, exceeding Active, being purposely drawn to stir up lacivious desires, and therefore I shall pass them over. The *Agrians* are the best Workmen I ever met withal in working Gold on Agat, Christal, and other brittle things, which few of our Lapidaries, or Goldsmiths can do, or if they can, fall short in equalling them.

Pasing from *Agra*, I came to *Fetipour*, once the Seat of the Empire, but now not much considerable, except for its lovely Meidan and Mosque; the entry of *Ecbar*'s Pallace, and some stately Pillars scattered up and down; it was slighted, as they say, because all the Springs about it were brackish, and unwholesome. I was informed, in this Province there are upwards of 3400 Towns and Villages, of which, next to what I have named, these are the Chief, *viz. Bernzabad*, *Chitopour*, *Bargant*, *Mirda*, *Hindon*, *Ladono*, *Chalaour*, *Byana*, *Canova*, and *Scanderbade*, most of these produce Manufactures of Stuffs, Silks, Tapestry, *&c.* and the Revenues of this Province mount very near to that of *Guzerat*.

Next we entered the Province of *Dehly* by difficult ways, because the Rains had made the Rivers swell in many places. It bounds on *Agra* to the North; and *Dehly*, the Principal Town of the Province is about 45 Lergues from *Agra*, and Mogul *Cah Gehan*, and *Aureng Zeb*, made it the Royal Seat of the Empire; the way is all along planted with curious Trees in a Line, and each half League is marked with a kind of a Turret, and there are conveniencies by the way for Travellers to shelter and rest in: There is by the way likewise, an ancient Heathen Temple, visited by the *Gentiles*, who provide necessaries for a great many Apes that are kept there, and they pay a kind of a blind Devotion to them, as the Creatures of the Pagods. *Dehly* seems to be composed of certain Villages, and there is the Ruins of a Town, which the *Indians* say, was the Regal Seat of King *Porus*, famed in History for the Wars

he maintained againſt *Alexander* the Great. There is to be ſeen a Piramid or Obelisk of Stone, with an Inſcription in very ancient Characters, which they ſay, *Alexander* erected in Memory of his Victory over *Porus*, but the Character not being *Greek* renders it doubtful.

This City lies in an open Champion Country, waſhed by the River *Gemna*, it has a Fortreſs half a League in circumference, with a ſtrong Wall, and a round Tower, every 10 Battlements being ſecured by a Ditch wharfed with Stone, and a Garden round it. In this Fortreſs the Mogul holds his Pallace, and keeps the Enſigns of his Royalty; and from hence he beholds the fighting of Elephants, and other paſtimes at Land, as alſo on the River; and towards the Town is a large place where the *Rajas* in the Mogul's Pay Encamp, as his Guard. The Market is kept in a fine Square, where abundance of Juglers, and Fellows pretending to Conjuration, ſhew Tricks. All the Mogul's Attendance in the Pallace ſhew him a profound Reverence, ſtanding demure before him, with their Hands a-croſs upon their Breaſts, none daring ſpeak unleſs Commanded, and at Noon every Day he gives Audience to ſuch as have recourſe to him for Juſtice, adminiſtring it Impartially, without reſpect of Perſons.

There is a ſtately Hall, wherein he gives Audience to his Miniſters about affairs of State, and thoſe of his Houſhold; and in this Pallace is a Throne of Maſſie Gold, ſet with Flowers of Diamonds, Emerald, Rubies, and other precious Stones, and a Peacock made out in all its Colours, with Gold, Silver, and precious Stones, inſomuch, that it reſembles the Life, and is of vaſt value: They ſay theſe were begun by *Tamarlan*, and finiſhed by two ſucceeding Moguls: Some hold theſe to be worth 20 Millions of Gold.

There is a ſtately Moſque, with its Dome of white Marble, and the Karvanſerai of *Begum Saheb*, Daughter to *Cah Gahen*, and Siſter to *Aureng Zeb*. There are two extraordinary fair Streets in the City,

ty, very wide and ſtreight, of a conſiderable length, having Arches all along on both ſides ſerving for Shops, and on the back-ſide many convenient Ware-houſes, alſo Tarraſſed Walks over the Arches, where they take the Air, and have a fine Proſpect; and theſe Streets end in a very fine Square and Caſtle: There is nothing elſe conſiderable, for the ordinary Houſes are built moſtly of Earth and Canes, the other Streets are narrow and incommodious, by reaſon of the vaſt Crouds of People that flock to Court, but when the Court is abſent, there is Room enough without joſtling; for the great Men, when there with the Mogul, have large Trains, and his Officers are very numerous; he has alſo a Guard to his Perſon of 35000 Horſe, and about 12000 Foot, and moſt of the Soldiers have their Wives and Children to attend them; ſo that by what appears, the Reſidentary Inhabitants do not appear to be two thirds of the number by a conſiderable deal, if we reckon the Merchants and Artificers that follow the Court where-ever it removes, into the account of the former.

They have Elks and Rhinoceroſes here that are as large as Oxen; they have many Buffiers, and they breed up Dogs brought from *Bengala*, who are held to have been originally brought from *England*, for their paſtime in hunting Lyons, and other furious Wild Beaſts. They have Elephants both ſmall and great; thoſe are the biggeſt and ſtrongeſt that are brought from *Ceilan*, and ſome of theſe will carry 40 Men of 80 pound weight each; they are very ductil, he that guides them can direct them to do what he pleaſes with his Voice, and a ſmall Wand: the Elephant's Trunk ſerves him inſtead of a Hand to feed himſelf, and take up Water, *&c.* they ſhow many Tricks as their Guide directs them and will do no hurt unleſs provoked, or in their Luſt, and then the Guide who rides on their Necks is in great danger, for they run furiouſly and turn all topſiturvy till they are ſtopped by Fire-works, which they throw before them. They decoy the

he wild Elephants in the Woods and Mountains with a tame Female Elephant, entangling him in toiles whilſt he is in Copulation, and then keep him without Meat till he is almoſt Famiſhed, and ſo overmaſtering him, they lead him away, by coakſing of him, and feeding him with Balls made of Paſte, for they ſoon fall in Love with thoſe that ſeem to be kind to them; ſometimes they catch them in Pits, covered over with rotten Hurdles and Earth; they are not ſeven Years with Calf, as ſome ignorantly hold; but when the Females are young and luſty, they bring forth at the end of 12 or 14 Months. Some ſay they worſhip the Moon, becauſe they have been found kneeling, and throwing up Herbs and Flowers at its Change; and uſually about that time they waſh themſelves in Rivers, if they have an opportunity.

The *Indians*, as well as the *Moors*, often kill them in the Mountains for their Teeth, they having two exceeding large ones: Some are found Dead with their Trunks off a good way, and this misfortune happens to them when they go to Water at *Ganges*, or *Indus*, which Rivers are peſtered with huge Crocodiles, who bite off the ends of their Trunks, when they dip them in the Water, and ſo the poor Beaſt is ſtarved for want of wherewithal to feed it ſelf. Some hold theſe Creatures live an hundred Years.

At *Debly* they have very curious Pictures repreſenting the Hiſtory of their King's Wars, and ſuch like Figures, and their Colours exceeding ours, render them very Lovely and Ornamental. The richer ſort here have abundance of Jewels, eſpecially the Rajas, who preſerve them as an Inheritance from Generation to Generation. They have a kind of Tin here brought from *China*, that in Luſter nearly reſembles Silver. To the North-eaſt of the Province of *Debly* is that of *Aimer*; the Country of *Sinde* bounds it on the Weſt, *Agra* to the Eaſt, *Multan* and *Pengeab* to the North, and *Guzerat* to the South: It was formerly divided into 3 Provinces,

viz.

viz. Bando, Gessolmere, and *Sorat*, but now bears the Name of the Capital City; it lies between 25 and 26 Degrees North Latitude, at the Foot of a very high and almost inaccessible Mountain, at the top of which is a strong Castle, and it is above a League in turnings and windings to come to it.

The Town of *Azmer* is walled with Stone, and has a good Ditch about it; without it there appears the Ruins of many stately Buildings that shew great Antiquity; in the Town is to be seen *Cogea-Mondy*, a *Mahometan* Saint; it is a curious Building, having three Courts paved with Marble, the first is extreamly large, and hath on the side several Sepulchers of pretended Saints, with a reservatory of Water, and a neat Well about it; the second is not so large, but much more beautiful, and many Lamps burning in it; the third is more beautiful than the rest, and therein is *Cogea*'s Tomb in a Chapel; the Doors of it are adorned with various Colours made into Flowers, and other curious Devices with Mother-Pearl: There are other Courts and Lodgings for the Imans or Priests who read the Alcoran, and many go a Pilgrimage from far Countries to this Tomb. The common Building of the Town, as all over *India*, is but indifferent, yet there are many particular pleasant places in it.

There is a great Feast held every New Years day, and a Fair kept by the Ladies of the *Seraglio*, and others of the best Quality, who expose their Jewels, Cloth of Gold, and other rich Things to Sale, and indeed themselves, for the wittiest and handsomest usually get Husbands, if they be not Married before. They have a sumptuous Feast at the Mogul's Charge; and he is presented by them, the great Men, and their Ladies, with a vast deal of Treasure, and in the several Provinces whilst this Feast holds, he has seldom less than 14 or 15 Millions given him. There are curious Shows of Elephants, Fireworks, and other pleasant things to divert them; and when he is present with his Begums or Princesses, he lays aside the stifness of Majesty, and is very familiar with

with his Nobles, returning them Presents, but of no great Value in some parts of this Province, and very ordinary in others. The *Indian* Girls are Married at 8 or 9 years old, and have usually Children at 10: Those of the more rustick sort go naked, except a Rag to hide their Privities.

They have a Beast here no bigger than a Hare, which has on its Belly a swelling, or Bladder, that fills with corrupt Blood, which being taken off becomes pure Musk, but the Beast lives not long after it. They use Oxen for most sort of Labours, as to ride on, carry Burthens, draw in Coaches, Carts, Chariots; the white ones are esteemed the best, and bear an extraordinary price.

They make store of Salt-Petre in this Province, which is done in this manner. They dig a fat black Earth, and put it into Pits, mingling it there with Water, and beating it with great Wooden Beaters, so let it stand till the Water has imbibed the saltness, then they draw it off in Pots, Resine and Boyl it till it Rocks, and being dried in the Sun, they sell it to the *Europeans*, who carry it home as Ballast, and vend it at good Rates. This Province is held to pay the Mogul between 30 and 33 Millions a Year, by way of Tax and Customs.

Departing from hence mostly through a Country indifferent Fertil, and watered with some small Branches of Rivers, I entered the Province of *Sinde*, or *Sindy*, which by some is called *Tatta*, bounded with *Azmar* to the East, and the Mountains that border partly belonging to one Province; on the North with *Multan*; on the South with a Desart and the *Indian* Sea; and on the West by *Macram* and *Segestan*: It reaches from South to North in length, on both sides the River *Indus*, and the Orientals call that vast River *Sinde*, or *Sindy*. On the Banks of it was fought a Famous Battle, between *Ginguiscan* first Emperor of the *Tartars* and the Antient Moguls, and Sultan *Gelaleddin*, which alotted the Empire to the former, in his gaining a Victory wherein 200000 Men were Slain, so that he utterly vanquished

quiſhed the *Caezmian* Princes, who had for a long time been Maſters of *Perſia*, all *Zagatay*, and the greateſt part of the Country of *Turqueſtan*. This River runs 1000 Miles, and receives many other Rivers into it; its Banks are thick of Towns, but there is no great ſtore of Fiſh in it, by reaſon of the Allegator, or Crocodiles that deſtroy them.

The chief Town in this Province is *Talta*, though there are ſeveral others of Note and Trade, as *Died*, or *Diub-ſind*, it lies between 24 and 25 Degrees North Latitude. At *Talta*, particularly, there is a great Trade, where the *Indian* Merchants come from all parts to buy up the Goods made there, the Inhabitants being very ingenious in all kind of Arts. The great River mentioned, makes many Iſlands towards this place which are very Fruitful, but little Inhabited, yet renders the Town very commodious, were it not for the great heat that reigns there in the Summer Seaſon.

At *Lourebender*, 3 days Journey from this Town upon the Sea, there is a fine Road for Shipping, being reckoned by many the moſt commodious in the *Indies*, which cauſes a great Trade, where the Palanquins of *Talta* are vended, being the neateſt in *Indoſtan*. The beſt and neateſt Chariots and Coaches made in *India* are found here, though the *Indians* Travel in Palanquins, which are a kind of Couches with 4 Feet, having on each ſide Balliſters, 4 or 5 Inches high, and at the Head and Feet a back-ſtay like a Childe's Cradle: This Machin hangs by a long Pole, called Pambou, by the means of 2 Frames nailed to the Feet of the Couch, theſe Frames have great Rings, through which Ropes paſs, and alſo the Pole or Pambous, and ſo the Planquin is carried on Mens Shoulders, who ply for that end for a ſmall matter. Theſe Machins are very richly adorned, every one doing it after his own humour, as he is able; ſome with Tiſue, others with Cloth of Gold, or rich Embroidery; for as the *Indians* are generally Neat, ſo they are moſtly Proud, taking a delight to ſhow their finery to Strangers.

The

The other Provinces of the Mogul's Empire are, *Multan*, *Candahar*, *Caboul* or *Caboulistan*, *Cachmir* or *Kichmir*, *Lahors*, *Ayoud* or *Haoud*, *Varad* or *Varal*, *Becar*, *Halabas*, *Oulesser* or *Bengala*, *Malva*, *Candich*, *Balagate*, *Doltabud*, *Telenga*, and *Baglana*; but these, and some others in *India*, not under the Jurisdiction of the Great Mogul, for want of an opportunity, and an indisposition I had, by reason of the intemperateness of the Air, upon often changing Climates, not giving me leave to take a strict survey of them, I hope the Reader will pardon some Omissions, and be pleased to guess at them by what I have said of many in particular, since as to Trade, People, Building, Manners, Customs, *&c.* they little vary, only I shall say something of the Famous River *Ganges*, and then conclude my Travels in this Torrid Country, with General, but very Material Observations.

The *Ganges*, as well as *Indus*, is a vast River, full of pleasant Islands, covered with lovely *Indian* Trees, which delight the Passengers for 5 or 6 days Sailing. The Heathens, or Gentils, *Indians*, esteem the Water: They have Temples, and Pagods near it, and here have a freedom of Worship; the chief Pagods are that of *Jaganat*, which is at one Mouth of the *Ganges*, and that of the Town of *Bonarous* upon the River; these are superstitiously decked with Gold and Jewels; Millions of People repair thither, and Festivals are kept for many days together, when they carry their Idols in Triumph.

The Great Mogul drinks commonly of the Water of the *Ganges*, though many affirm, that if it be not boiled it causes a Flux. This River having received a vast number of Brooks and Rivers from the North-east and West, discharges it self by several Mouths into the vast Gulf of *Bengala*, at the heighth of about 23 Degrees, and this Gulf begins in 8 Degrees North Latitude, and is reckoned 800 Leagues over: On the sides of it, to the East, is many Towns, belonging to divers petty Princes, who are Sovereigns, with whose Subjects, as well as the Moguls,

Moguls, the *Europeans* Trade for rich Commodities. On the banks of the *Ganges* are Herds of Deer, grazing, but the Crocodiles destroy many of them by pulling them into the River when they come to Drink, and then devour them: I saw a Negro Boy pulled under by one of them as he was Swiming, but saw him no more. The Ships that Moar in the River where these most haunt, keep Guard by Night to prevent their clambering on the Decks, and surprizing the Men a sleep.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Marriages, Apparrels, Superstitious Customs, the keeping the Mogul's *Birth-Day, and other Things observed by the* Indians, *as the Funerals of their Dead,* &c.

HAving described many Things worthy of Note in *India*, I now proceed to others which I purposely omitted, that for Brevity sake I might have the conveniency of collecting and placing them together.

The Marriages of the *Mahometan Indians*, especially those of Note, are celebrated with Pompous shows, and much Magnificency; they are Married by a Moula, or *Mahometan* Priest, and then the Bride in rich Ornaments, is carried to the Bridegroom's Apartments on an Elephant. The Females Marry very young, as at 8, 9, and 10 years of Age, and some sooner, but those that Marry early leave of Child bearing at 30, and are very much wrinkled. The Wedding Ceremonies of the *Gentil Indians* is this; the Bramen, or Priest, after having said some

ſome Prayers over the Couple, puts a Cloth between them, and orders the Man with his naked Foot to touch the naked Foot of the Woman, and ſo the Ceremony is compleated. The Women are very Fruitful in this Country, and eaſily Delivered.

As for Aparrel, they wear Cotton, Stuffs, or Silks, as looſe of they can; the Man has Linnen wraped round his Head, like a little cloſe Turban, and the Woman a kind of a Carchief, though their Habits, according to the Caſts, are various, yet of as many Colours as they can have them.

They often do Pennance by Abſtinence, and ſome are put in a hole for that purpoſe, where, they ſay, they remain 6 or 7 Days without Eating or Drinking; but this is moſtly in the Temples of their Pagods, of which they have numbers, many with vaſt Labour being cut out of natural Rock, ſome like Men, and others very Monſtrous: And in ſome Provinces great Hills and Rocks, with prodigious coſt and pains are cut into ſuch Forms or Shapes, which ſhews their Superſtition.

At *Bengala*, and other places, they Sacrifice to the Sea, throwing in Coco Nuts, which little Boys ſwim for, and make much ſport and paſtime in ſtrugling for them, and this they call the opening of the Sea, becauſe, for ſome Months, Trade is ſtopped, by reaſon the Mounſon, or Trading-Wind, ſerves not, and this they do with a great deal of Devotion and Solemnity.

The Caſts, or Tribes of the *Gentil Indians*, are reconed to be 84, and though they profeſs to be all of the ſame Religion, yet they differ mightily in their Ceremonies. Every one of the Tribes follow a particular Trade, and their off-ſpring muſt not quit it under the Penalty of being counted Infamous, and turned out of his Caſt. They are generally very Charitable, eſpecially to Strangers in their Sickneſs or Diſtreſs, and will ſtreighten themſelves very much to relieve them. The Bramens, who are their Doctors, make the firſt and head Tribe.

The

The Mogul's Birth-Day is kept with great Feaſting and Rejoycing, and then he is publickly weighed in Golden Scales, and precious Stones tied up in bags are the Weights: The Weight of him is Regiſtred, and if that Year he weighs more than the former there is great Rejoycing; and for Trifles he gives amongſt his Nobles and Favourites, he receives a vaſt Treaſure in Preſents; if he weighs leſs, they conclude him to be Languiſhing, which abates much of their Merriment, and that Day particularly, the *Indian* Women adorn their Ears and Noſes with Rings and Jewels, if they are forced to borrow them, though at other times the better ſort wear them; thoſe they wear in their Ears are flat, either of Gold, Silver, or Copper.

Among the *Indians* they have a Liquor called Tary, which is the Juyce of a Palm, or Coco Tree, or rather the Sap, which they love ſo much, that in many places the Women make it in their bargain before they are Married, that they ſhall be allowed to Drink it, and to go abroad ſometimes to ſee their Neighbours: It is gotten by wounding the Trees, and taſts ſomething like Whitewine. The Coco Nuts are about the bigneſs of an ordinary Mellon, and are very much eſteemed for the Liquor they produce. The *Dutch* at *Batavia* have a Market kept under theſe kind of Trees, and the pleaſantneſs of the Shade brings them in a great income for Standings, beſide the advantage of the Fruit. As for the Swords, Daggers, and other Arms of the *Indians*, except Bows and Arrows, they are heavy and clouterly made, after the ancient Faſhion of the *Engliſh*. There are in *India* many Hermophradites, partaking the Genitals of both Sexes; theſe, though they go in Womens Aparrel, wear a Turban on their Heads to diſtinguiſh them, under a great Penalty.

As for the belief of the *Indian Gentiles*, it is, that every Man may be ſaved in his Religion or Sect, provided he exactly follow the way that God has directed him, affirming, when they bow to Idols, they

they worship them not, but have God in their Mind; they say those that take ill courses will be Damned, and doubt not, but their Religion is the first of all Religions, and that it was established in the days of *Adam*, and preserved by *Noah*, believing that there is a Heaven and a Hell, for Rewards and Punishments, but none shall enter before the Universal Judgment: That they show Honour and Respect to a Cow, because she affords them more subsistance than other Creatures. The *Pythagorian* Doctrine or Opinion of Transmigration of Souls is held by many of the Casts, which makes them refrain killing Beasts or Birds, least the Souls of some of their Tribe, departed, should be in them, and they often rescue them by purchase from the *Mahometans*, who are about to kill them.

They call their God *Ram*, and say he was produced out of the Light, and in that consideration, they render him Divine Honours in their Pagods, and elsewhere. In saluting their Friends they repeat his Name twice; their Adoration consists in joyning their Hands, as if they Prayed and letting them fall very low, then gently raising them to their Mouth, and last of all, over their Heads. They say *Chitta* was *Ram*'s Wife, and when they see the Picture of the Virgin *Mary*, they affirm it is *Chitta*'s Representation, saluting and bowing very low to it, bringing Offerings of Fruit, Oyl, and Wax-Candles, for none of their Sacrifices are Bloody, but consist of bringing to their Pagods, things of Ornament, and such as may be Eaten, and taking the Bramen's Directions they anoint the Body of the Image with Oyl and say their Prayers before the Idol they intend to Invocate; they present their Oblation, and return out of the Temple, and when the Bramen has taken what he thinks fit, the rest is distributed to those of any Religion that will come for it. Besides the Bramens, the *Gymnosophists* of *Porphyrus* are the Priests, and Doctors of the Heathen *Indians*. But the *Mahometans* have a Mufti, and here I omit their Opinions, as being spoken of elsewhere.

They

They have many strange Ceremonies in the Funerals of their Dead; they first wash them in Water near the Temple of some Pagod, and then in some places siting uncovered in a Chair, is carried with beat of Drum to a Funeral Pile, attended by the Wife, and the Relations, in the richest Attire, and after the usual Absolution, it is laid on the Pile, and the Wife who had followed in Triumph, has a kind of a Throne seated there, in which she places her self, adorned with Gold, Jewels, and Silver of her own, and lent her by her Friends, seeming willing to die, singing and rejoycing, that passing with him through the Flames, she shall have the Honour and Happiness to accompany him in the other World; and when the Bramen sets Fire to the Pile, the Relations throw in Spices, Oyls, and Odours, till both the Bodies are consumed. This, by the wise, is looked on as a piece of Priestcraft, to get the Riches that are found in the Ashes, as Gold, Silver, and such Jewels as resist the Fire; for the Ashes being accounted Sacred, none but the Bramen has the medling with them; and the Woman is counted Infamous among her Cast that refuses to undergo this Cruelty.

Some are buried with their Husbands, up to the Neck, then strangled and quite covered; and some of the Maids, for the love they bear their Mistris, will in like manner accompany her in Death; but this is rarely used now, for the Mogul, and other *Mahometan* Princes of *India*, have strictly forbid it, as Inhuman, and Barbarous, which secures many Women from the Infamy they would otherwise undergo in their Cast; yet though the Governors pretend all that in them lies to restrain it, some are still burnt, for by earnest Sollicitations, and large Presents, if the Wife Petition for it, which some of them do, leave is obtained; but it is thought they are incited to it by the crafty perswasions of the knavish Bramen, who promises them inestimable Joys and Pleasures in another Life.

they worship them not, but have God in their Mind; they say those that take ill courses will be Damned, and doubt not, but their Religion is the first of all Religions, and that it was established in the days of *Adam*, and preserved by *Noah*, believing that there is a Heaven and a Hell, for Rewards and Punishments, but none shall enter before the Universal Judgment: That they show Honour and Respect to a Cow, because she affords them more subsistance than other Creatures. The *Pythagorian* Doctrine or Opinion of Transmigration of Souls is held by many of the Casts, which makes them refrain killing Beasts or Birds, least the Souls of some of their Tribe, departed, should be in them, and they often rescue them by purchase from the *Mahometans*, who are about to kill them.

They call their God *Ram*, and say he was produced out of the Light, and in that consideration, they render him Divine Honours in their Pagods, and elsewhere. In saluting their Friends they repeat his Name twice; their Adoration consists in joyning their Hands, as if they Prayed, and letting them fall very low, then gently raising them to their Mouth, and last of all, over their Heads. They say *Chitta* was *Ram*'s Wife, and when they see the Picture of the Virgin *Mary*, they affirm it is *Chitta*'s Representation, saluting and bowing very low to it, bringing Offerings of Fruit, Oyl, and Wax-Candles, for none of their Sacrifices are Bloody, but consist of bringing to their Pagods, things of Ornament, and such as may be Eaten, and taking the Bramen's Directions they anoint the Body of the Image with Oyl and say their Prayers before the Idol they intend to Invocate; they present their Oblation, and return out of the Temple, and when the Bramen has taken what he thinks fit, the rest is distributed to those of any Religion that will come for it. Besides the Bramens, the *Gymnosophists* of *Porphyrus* are the Priests, and Doctors of the Heathen *Indians*. But the *Mahometans* have a Mufti, and here I omit their Opinions, as being spoken of elsewhere.

They

They have many ſtrange Ceremonies in the Funerals of their Dead; they firſt waſh them in Water near the Temple of ſome Pagod, and then in ſome places ſiting uncovered in a Chair, is carried with beat of Drum to a Funeral Pile, attended by the Wife, and the Relations, in the richeſt Attire, and after the uſual Abſolution, it is laid on the Pile, and the Wife who had followed in Triumph, has a kind of a Throne ſeated there, in which ſhe places her ſelf, adorned with Gold, Jewels, and Silver of her own, and lent her by her Friends, ſeeming willing to die, ſinging and rejoycing, that paſſing with him through the Flames, ſhe ſhall have the Honour and Happineſs to accompany him in the other World; and when the Bramen ſets Fire to the Pile, the Relations throw in Spices, Oyls, and Odours, till both the Bodies are conſumed. This, by the wiſe, is looked on as a piece of Prieſtcraft, to get the Riches that are found in the Aſhes, as Gold, Silver, and ſuch Jewels as reſiſt the Fire; for the Aſhes being accounted Sacred, none but the Bramen has the medling with them; and the Woman is counted Infamous among her Caſt that refuſes to undergo this Cruelty.

Some are buried with their Husbands, up to the Neck, then ſtrangled and quite covered; and ſome of the Maids, for the love they bear their Miſtriſs, will in like manner accompany her in Death; but this is rarely uſed now, for the Mogul, and other *Mahometan* Princes of *India*, have ſtrictly forbid it, as Inhuman, and Barbarous, which ſecures many Women from the Infamy they would otherwiſe undergo in their Caſt; yet though the Governors pretend all that in them lies to reſtrain it, ſome are ſtill burnt, for by earneſt Sollicitations, and large Preſents, if the Wife Petition for it, which ſome of them do, leave is obtained; but it is thought they are incited to it by the crafty perſwaſions of the knaviſh Bramen, who promiſes them ineſtimable Joys and Pleaſures in another Life.

Having somewhat satisfied my Curiosity, and, as I think, given a satisfactory account of the places I visited, the Customs of the People, &c. the Fame of *China* invited me to take a very tedious Journey to visit that Kingdom, and hearing that a Caravan of Merchants every Year passed from *Lahors* thither, I found a convenient opportunity by Land and Water, to arrive at that City a little before the Caravan was about to depart, which consisted of about 500 Men, and 7000 Camels, Horses, &c.

CHAP. XVII.

Travels through divers Countries into China, *and a satisfactory Account of all that is remarkable in that Kingdom.*

IN our Passage to *China*, for brevity sake, I shall not be particular in every thing I saw, as not being remarkable in such wild and desart Countries. Let it suffice then, that setting out we passed over vast Plains, Rivers, Mountains, and Rockey ways, in danger of wild Beasts and Robbers, there being but few, and those inconsiderable Towns, till we came to *Athec*, where recruiting with Provisions, and refreshing ourselves, we Travelled on in much the like ways to *Passaur*, and so by several small Towns till we came to a City called *Capherstam*; the Country it stands in is very Fertil, producing good Wine, and one thing I observed, that they go to their Temples in Mourning Weeds; and 25 days Journey from this, we came to *Gtrideli*, in 20 days more to *Cabul*, and so to *Cirucar*, and *Parona*, the last Town in the Mogul's Territories, after which we were often forced to pay Tribute to petty Princes that

that govern'd the Cities and dependancies in our way. Then to *Aingharan* we journied over exceeding high Mountains, and leaving that place, came to *Calcia*, then to *Gialalabath*; here recruiting, we passed to *Talhan*, and *Cheman* in the Kingdom of *Samarhan*, and by a troublesom way from thence, came to *Badascian*, and *Chiarchiumar*, where we rested for some time, and then kept on our Journey to *Serpanel*, and so entered the Country of *Sarcil*, full of Villages, and in 6 days passed over *Ciecialith*, a vast Mountain covered with Snow, in which Passage some of the company perished with Cold, and in a tedious Travel attained *Tanghetar*, in the Kingdom of *Cascar*, and passing *Jaconich*, came to *Hiarchan* the Royal City, where, for a good Sum, the Master of the Caravan obtained the King's Passport to further our Journey more quietly: Then we kept our Journey through *Jocil*, *Hancialix*, *Aleghet*, *Hagabatth*, *Egriar*, *Marcetelec*, *Thalet*, *Horma*, *Thoantac*, *Mingrieda*, *Capetalcol*, *Zelan*, *Sarc*, *Guebedal*, *Cambesci*, *Monserset*, *Ciacolo*, and *Ascu*; we passed these by a very tedious way, over Stones, Sands, and the Desarts of *Cercatha*, and so to *Oitocarach*, *Gazo*, *Casciami*, *Dellai*, *Seregabedal*, *Ungan*, and *Cucia*, then to *Pucian*, and *Turphan*, a Fortified City; thence to *Aramuth*, and so to *Camul*, the last City of the Kingdom of *Ciales*, and from *Camul* to the North Wall of *China*, through which we had admission at a place called *Ciaicum*, after a 6 Months Journey, and so passed to the City of *Socive*, and thus being entered *China*, I shall proceed to speak of it, as far as I could learn, during my stay there.

As for the vast Kingdom of *China*, it has gone under many Denominations, as the Princes has been pleased to new Name and call it, as they severally ascended to the Throne: Under the Reign of the first King it was called *Tae mim que*, that is, *The Kingdom of great Brightness*, and by several other Names. But when the *Tartar*, whose Race are now in the power, Conquer'd it, they called it *Tai Cinque*, *A Kingdom of great Purity*; and since it was called

Chin, to which the *Portugueſes*, the firſt *Europeans* Trading there, adding an A, it has ſince amongſt us been called *China*, and ſo it is generally accepted.

It is ſeated in the extremities of *Aſia* towards the Eaſt, and lies under 20 Degrees from North to South from the Fortreſs of *Cai Pim*, placed on the Frontiers of the Province of *Pekim*, in the Latitude of 41, to the Meridional point of the Iſland of *Hai nan*, in 8 Degrees of the Elevation, and to the South of the Province of *Quamtum*, ſo that according to the *Chineſe* account, it is from North to South 5750 Li or Furlongs, which make 575 French Leagues, at 25 to a Degree; and from *Po* point, a Sea-Port Town in the Province of *Che-Kiam*, to the extreamity of the Province of *Suchven*, in a ſtreight Line from Eaſt to Weſt it is 426 French Leagues, though Geographers taking it another way, make it much longer, *viz.* from the laſt place to the North-weſt of the Province of *Leaotum*, called *Caiyven* to the laſt City of the Province of *Yunnan*, called *Cin-tien-Kiu-min-Fat*, and ſo the length is accounted 750 French Leagues, and the breadth taken from *Tam Chan*, the moſt eaſterly place of the Country of *Leaotum*, joyning to the Kingdom of *Corea*, to *Tum-tim* to the Weſtward of the Province of *Xenſi*, it is 500 French Leagues.

This vaſt Kingdom, or Empire, contains 15 Provinces, larger than ſome conſiderable Kingdoms, moſtly Rich and Fertile, which are ranked according to their Antiquity and Precedency, in this Order, by the *Chineſes*.

Pekim, *Nankim*, now called *Kiam-nan*, *Xenſi*, *Xantum*, *Ho-nan*, *Xanſi*, *Chekiam*, *Kianoſi*, *Huquam*, *Su Chuens*, *Fokien*, *Quamtum*, *Quamſi*, *Yunnan*, *Qyei Cheum*, and *Xantum*; many of theſe have Towns commodiouſly on the Sea, and others on great Rivers and Lakes, the whole Country being plentifully watered, by which means it is exceeding Fertil, and ſaves them abundance of Land Carriage.

The

The *Chineses* brag much of the Original of their Kingdom, and some of their Books place it many thousand Years before the Creation of the World; but most agree, it has preserved its form of Government during the Reign of 22 Families, and from them have descended 236 Kings, during the space 4034 Years, for so long they allow it to have been a Kingdom; yet there is amongst them another more probable account, *viz.* This account reduces the beginning of it to about 400 Years after the General Deluge, and if any pretend to dispute it by Writing, or word of Mouth, it is enough to endanger their Lives, for they look upon it as a disparagement to their Kingdom, as being the proudest, and most conceited People of all Nations, thinking themselves the best in the World, and that all others are insignificant to them, making in their Maps *China* very spacious, and other Countries like little Rocks in the Sea, and they hold a firm opinion, that *Europe* is no more than 2 small Islands; they also hold, all their Neighbours for *Barbarians*, and paint them in Monstrous and Ridiculous Forms; and to make them seem Cowards, though they have often experienced them to the contrary, they report and paint them as little Pigmies, who tie themselves in bundles when they go abroad, least the Eagles and Kites should carry them away; and when any one argues learnedly to them, they start, as in a surprize, demanding whether they have their Books in their Country, and when the Strangers Answer no, they reply, why then how came you by that Learning? They hold their Religion the purest and ancientest of all the Religions in the World; However, it is to be believed, that their Chronicle is the ancientest that is to be found, and is so well connected, the Reign of one King hanging so well to the other, that it cannot reasonably be suspected to have been Written upon trust, by Conjecture, or Imagination.

They divide the Heavens into 28 Constellations, and *China* into so many parts, allowing each part

one, and leave none for any other Nation; and in brief, they give their own moſt lofty and magnificent Titles, but to Foreign Countries, moſt barbarous, ſcornful, and degrading Names, to exalt their Kingdom by the diſparaging others, which Pride I am apt to believe proceeds from their Ignorance, though ſome of the Nobles are more moderate and diſcreet, but then it is ſuch as have Travelled abroad, though but a few of them are permitted, and even theſe dare not ſpeak much in the praiſe of other Countries, leaſt they ſhould be looked on as undervaluers of their own, and conſequently as Enemies. Some of their Kings have had the vanity to ſtile themſelves Child of the Sun, and Emperor of the World. They are, however, a very induſtrious People, as appears by their vaſt and ſtately Edifices, Manufactures, and other curious Matters, for there are no idle People in the Kingdom, the Lame, Blind, and Deaf employ themſelves in one buſineſs or other, as they are capacitated, and get a living by it, inſomuch that they have a Proverb, which ſays, *There is nothing in* China *caſt away*; and let it be never ſo vile, it may turn to Profit one way or other in the City of *Pekim*, which is the chief of the Kingdom. Many thouſands of Families live only by making and ſelling Card-Matches, and Wicks for Candles, and as many by what they pick up about the Streets. They have in every City a Bell, and a Drum-Tower, on which Watchmen ſtrike, to give the Hours, and the quarters in the Night-time, and both the Drum and Bell are exceeding large, being heard many Miles, anſwering one another in a Muſical Harmony. They burn an Incenſe made of Sweet Woods and Perfumes in their Chambers, and before their Pagods, making Candles of the ſame and other mixtures, which in burning caſt a fragrant ſmell: and ſome they make ſo large to place in their Temples before their Idols that they will continue burning 20 or 30 Days and Nights, and burning to certain windings and marks, they, by that, diſtinguiſh Hours and Days, in burning ſuch and ſuch exact

act proportions; and those that burn them in their Chambers, when they would rise at a certain Hour, tie a little Brass weight by a String to a mark that specifies the Hour, and the string burning, the weight falls into a brass Bason set under it, and strikes like a Larum-Watch.

They have many other curious devices, as Chariots that will run swiftly without Horses, only a Man that sits in it turning a Winch, which by certain Springs turns the Wheels round with great Rapidity. But passing over things of this Nature for the present, I will proceed to describe, in some measure, the City of *Pekim*, the Metropolis of *China*, where the King has his chief Court.

This famous City is seated in a Plain, forming a vast Square, each of its sides being 12 *Chinese* Furlongs in length; it has 9 Gates, 3 upon the South side, and 2 upon each of the other sides: it is now Inhabited by the *Tartars*, and their Troops are divided into the 8 quarters, or, as they call them, Banners. But considering, under the preceeding Kings, the numerous Inhabitants had not a sufficient place to contain them, though the Nine Suburbs answering to the Gates were as big as Cities. There was a new City built like the old one, square in Form, having its North side joyning to the side of the old one; this has 7 Gates, and every one a Suburb answering to it, so that taking that in, with the Suburbs, it is of a vast circumference, yet many who have writ of it, have made it much larger than it is; the one and the other are divided into 5 Jurisdictions, or Tribunals, of which I shall speak hereafter. The principal Streets run to the 4 direct Points, or Winds; they are long, streight, and broad, so well proportioned, as if they had been marked out with a Line. The little Streets run all from East to West, being very fair, and divide the spaces between the great Streets into equal and proportionable Islands, having each a particular Name, and there is a Catalogue to be sold of them, with Notes and Directions, that Strangers, and those whose business it is to go on

Errands, may the eaſier find them, for they are very numerous.

The faireſt of theſe Streets is called *Cham gan Kiai*, or the Street of Perpetual Repoſe; it is about 30 Fathom broad, and of a vaſt length: The Houſes are low built, which, they ſay, is done in reſpect to the King's Pallace, that it ſhould appear more magnificent, though beſides the King's, there are Pallaces belonging to the Nobility very ſtately, yet they are built backward, ſo that nothing but a great Gate appears to the Street. The old and new City are crouded with ſwarms of People, as the Shops are with ſtore of rich Commodities, ſo that one would ſuppoſe there was a continual Fair held in it.

The King's Pallace is ſeated in the midſt of the City, and Fronts towards the South, as almoſt all others do in this Country; it is encompaſſed with a double encloſure of Walls, in form of a long ſquare; the outward encloſure is extraordinary high and thick, plaiſtered on both ſides with a curious red Plaiſter, and covered with a ſmall Roof of varniſhed Brick of a Gold Colour; the length of it from South to North is 8 *Chineſe* Furlongs; it has a Gate in the middle of each ſide, compoſed of 3 Portals, the middlemoſt never being opened but when the King paſſes, and theſe have a Guard upon them, but not very conſiderable; there are alſo many Elephants kept in a ſpacious place for ſervice, and to divert the King, where are Stables compleatly furniſhed for them, and no Perſons that have any conſiderable deformity are ſuffered to enter the Pallace; the inner Wall that immediately incloſes the Pallace is very thick, and high built, embelliſhed with well contrived Battlements, and extends from North to South 6 Furlongs, and a Furlong and an half in breadth, and the Pallace is about four Miles three quarters in circumference; it has 4 Gates with large vaulted Arches, thoſe to the South and North being like to them of the firſt Incloſure, and upon the Angles of the Walls are 8 Towers of an extraordinary bigneſs,

bigness, and good Architecture, Varnished with beautiful red, and adorned with Flowers of Gold, covered with Tiles of a Gold Varnish, and there are Guards kept in them all, except *Madarin*'s of the Tribunals within the Palace; and the Officers of the King's Houshold are forbidden to come within this Wall, unless they shew a little Table of Wood, plated with Ivory, wherein their Names, and the places they serve in are set down, with the Seal of the Mandarin to whom they belong. It has a curious Mote round it full of Fish, and every Gate a Draw-Bridge, unless the South, which lies over an Arch. In the vast space between the two Walls are many stately Palaces that might suit the entertainment of great Kings, they being richly adorned with polished Stone, and curious Gilding.

On the East side close by the Wall runs a River, over which are several Bridges of Marble, with Draw-Bridges in the middle of them: On the West where the space is large, there is a lake full of Fish, 5 Furlongs and a quarter in length, made in the Form of a Bass-Viol; where it is narrowest there is a very beautiful Bridge which answers the Gates of the Wall, at the end of which stand Triumphant Arches of 3 Arches a piece, very Majestick, and of excellent Workmanship. The Lake is environed with little Pallaces, or Houses of Pleasure, partly on the Water, and partly on the Land; and on the Lake are many beautiful Barges for the King's use; the remainder of the East and West spaces not taken up by the Lake, are beautified with Palaces, and the Officers Houses, all very Stately and Magnificent, as also of those of Artificers that belong to the King's Pallace.

The inward Pallace is low built, according to the fashion of the *Chineses*, containing many Pallaces, or Courts, one within the other, so that it seems a little City of Pallaces, guarded by a great number of Turrets, or Towers; and particularly in the King's Apartment is to be seen nothing but gilded Cielings, Pillars inlaid with Ivory and costly Stone;

his

his Throne is exceeding Rich and Magnificent, valued at many Millions, by reason of rich Stones and Gold that adorn it: There are also some Temples erected within this enclosure, and so many other things, that it would require a Volume to describe them particularly.

Besides the Temples in the Pallace, the King has 7 others, in which he Sacrifices once a Year, *viz.* 5 in the New, and 2 in the Old City, very large, and exceedingly beautified with Gold, and costly Paintings. In the first of these called *Tien-Tam*, or the Temple of Heaven, he Sacrifices to Heaven at the time the Sun comes to the Winter Solstice, Offering Hogs, Oxen, Goats, and Sheep, which is done with great Solemnity and Humility, the King laying aside his Golden Robe, yellow Vesture, and precious Jewels, and putting on a plain Habit of Black, or Sky-coloured Damask. The second Temple is called *Ti-Tam*, or the Temple of the Earth, and here the King before he is Crowned, Sacrifices to the God of the Earth, and then putting himself into the Habit of a Plougliman, he Ploughs a little piece of Ground with a varnished Plough, drawn by 2 Oxen with gilded Horns, and in the mean time the Queen and her Ladies dress him a homely Dinner, which they Eat together. To the North of these stands another Temple, called *Pe Tien-Tam*, or the North Temple of Heaven, he Sacrifices at the time of the Summer Solstice, and at Vernal Equinox he Sacrifices in a Temple to the East, called *Ge-Tam*, or the Temple of the Sun, and at the Autumnal Equinox, at the Western Temple, called *Tue Tam*, or the Temple of the Moon; and to prepare for the Sacrifices, there is a Fast held in *Pekin* for 3 days, during which time, no Flesh nor Fish is to be eaten, under great Penalties; and this they say they do in a thankfulness for the Benefits they receive from the Earth, by the Seasons of the Year, and the influence of Heaven.

In the sixth Temple called *Ti vam miao*, or the Temple of the past Kings, is a rich Throne, and

the Statues of all the Kings of *China*, from the first King, named *To hi to Xum Chi*, Father to the present Prince; here the King performs an Annual Ceremony to his Predecessors. The seventh Temple is called *Chim-Hoam Miao*, or the Temple of the Spirit that guards the Walls; but here the King never Sacrifices, but appoints Mandarins, and other Nobles, to do it at his Charge, so that the Ceremony is performed with much Royalty; and in every City there is such a Temple Dedicated to the same end.

Having proceeded thus far, I shall entertain you with an account of his Pomp, and Magnificent Attendance, when he goes out of his Palace; and this he rarely does but upon two occasions, *viz.* either to Hunt, and take the Air, or to Sacrifice, unless necessity forces him to the Wars; upon these occasions he takes a Guard, and all the Nobles that are near have notice, and attend him in their best Equipage; they most consist of between 12 and 13000, adorned with Embroideries of Gold, Silver, and precious Stones, their Horses traped with the same, and all their Servants that attend, at a distance, in very rich Attire.

First, there appear 24 Men with large Drums, in two Files, then the like number of Trumpets in the same manner, next as many with long Staves, varnished with red, and adorned with gilt Folinges; then 200 Halberdiers, the Heads of their Halberds being like a Crescent; these were followed by 100 Men carrying Maces of gilt Wood, with Staves as long as a Launce; then 2 Royal Poles, called *Cassi*, varnished with Red, and gilded with Flowers at both ends; after these 400 large Lanthorns richly adorned, with many curious pieces of Workmanship; these were followed by 400 Flambeauxs curiously Carved, and made of an odoriferous Wood that burns long, and casts a curious shining light; then 200 Launces fringed and adorned with the Spoiles of Wild Beasts; these are followed by 24 Banners, on which, in Gold, and Rich Imbroidery are represented the Signs of the Zodiack, which

the

the *Chineſes* divide into 24, contrary to us; after theſe come 56 Banners, with 56 Conſtellations painted on them, under which they comprehend the whole number of Stars; then 2 large Flabels, ſupported with Poles, and gilded with Suns, Birds, Beaſts, and other Things; theſe are ſucceeded by 24 Umbrellos richly adorned; then 8 ſorts of rich Utenſils for the Kings ordinary uſe, as a Table-Cloth, a Baſon and Eure of Gold, *&c.* after theſe 10 led Horſes all white, Traped with Imbroidery of Gold and precious Stones, followed by 100 Lanciers, and on both ſides them the Pages of the King that particular belong to his Chamber, and in the middle, between them, the King himſelf, with an Air very Majeſtick and Stern, mounted on a ſtately Steed, covered with a rich Umbrello, coſtly, beyond the belief of ſuch as have not ſeen it, ſhading both the King and his Horſe; he is followed by petty Kings, the Princes of the Blood, and a great number of the Principal Nobility in their richeſt Attire, and ranked according to their Degrees; then 500 young Gentlemen belonging to the King, followed by 1000 Footmen clad in red Robes, Embroidered with Stars and Flowers of Gold and Silver; then ſucceeds an open Chair, or Litter, carried by 36 Men, attended by another cloſe Litter as big as a handſom Room, carried by 120 Men; then 2 vaſt Chariots, each drawn by 2 Elephants; after theſe another large Chariot drawn by 8 Horſes, and another which is leſs, by 4; theſe have very rich Capariſons lined with Silk, and the Governors in coſtly Liveries, each of them attended by an Officer and 50 Soldiers; next to theſe follow 2000 Mandarins of the Learned Tribunal; and to cloſe all, 2000 Military Mandarins, with the King's Train: The People every where receive him with profound Veneration and Reſpect, many Kneeling, and others lifting up their Hands, with Prayers for his Proſperity.

Beſides the numerous Veſſels in Seaports, on Lakes, and Rivers, many of which have places in them

them like Rooms and Chambers, wherein the People belonging to them live and breed. The number of those that are appointed to carry Provisions to the Court are near 1000; those that are to attend the Mandarins are very numerous, and the rest, without great difficulty are not to be numbered, for all the Lakes, Rivers, and Ports are so full of Vessels, that they seem so many floating Towns, or Cities, and no less than 4 Millions of People are imployed in their Navigation. Their Rivers are many, and exceeding large, so that on the River *Kiam*, which is called the Son of the Sea, one may Sail for 3 Months. The Vessels that are only to bring the King's Habits, Silks, Stuffs, *&c* are 365, for every day he has a Change of rich Garments. What shall I say? The People adore him as a God, and think all the valuable things on Earth too little for him, and therefore it would be endless to describe all the Magnificence that attends his State, and every thing he is served withal. Let it suffice then, that no Prince on Earth that ever I saw, or heard of, equals him in Grandeur, for his Subjects look on him as the Son of Heaven, and that it is not only their Duty, but a main incumbent of Religion to Honour him in all they can. They bring their Timber, mostly by the Rivers, not in Vessels, but in Floats, some of 3 Leagues length, fastened together with Rushes and Osiers, and on the Floats are little Wooden Houses for those that guide them to lodge in by turns, and dress their Provisions: And indeed they bring plenty of all things by their Rivers and Lakes, which stores their Cities and Towns very plentifully, which are very numerous, for according to their own Printed Account, of those walled in are 4402, which are divided into two Orders, Civil and Military; the first of these comprehend 2045, of which 175 are Cities of the first Rank, which the *Chineses* call *Tin*; 274 of the second Rank, which they call *Cheu*; 288 which they call *Hien*; 205 Royal Hosteries, or places of Entertainment of the first, and 103 of the second

Rank

Rank; and these are Govern'd by Mandarins, who, in their Governments are a kind of Viceroys.

The Nobility of this Kingdom, as generally taken, is no more than an illustrious Grandeur that has continued for several Ages, but these are subject to many casualties, for when the Reigning Family expires, they are generally put to Death, because they are very powerful in the Country, and give a jealous suspition, so that new upstarts are put in their Room, which renders those more safe who acquire this Honour, by the Gown or Military Employments, because that Honour is recalled at pleasure, and the Grand-Child seldom enjoys that, or their Estate. There is but one of the Ancient Familes now remaining that I could here of, *viz.* that of the Famous *Confucius*, who was Born under the third Imperial Family, called *Chen*, 551 Years before the Birth of Christ; and this Family has great Priviledges above others, as to be exempted from Taxes and Tribute in the Provinces they Inhabit. They give a Title of Honour of a lower Degree to their learned Men: and Philosophers are in great Veneration amongst them, and to some of them they have given the Epethite of Saint, and give the same Veneration to their Memory as to their Pagods, though they take it as an affront to be taxed with it, for they call them Kings without Command, by which imploy they were worthy of Crowns for their Learning, Virtue; and Wisdom, but desteny prevented them. *Confucius*, a Learned Man among the *Chineses*, who, though long since Dead, is admired and adored amongst them: He modeled their Law, or Rule, to be observed, into nine Maxims, which he called *Chum-yum*, or the Golden Mediocrity, wherein he lays down, that a good Prince ought to have 9 Qualities, or Virtues. 1. To Govern himself well that he may show a good Example to those he Rules over. 2. To Honour and Cherish Learning, and learned Men, and to encourage Virtue, frequently to consult and converse with the Learned, on the Affairs of the Kingdom.

3. To

3. To Love and highly respect his Kindred, the Princes of the Blood, and to grant them the Favours and Rewards they merit. 4. To be Courteous and Respectful to the Nobility in general, and give them their due deserts. To incorporate himself in a Friendly and Amicable manner with all his Subjects, to equalize his Heart with theirs, and to regard and esteem them as his own proper substance and Person. 6. To Love his People with a true Affection, unmixed with Dissimulation; to rejoyce at their Prosperity, and be afflicted at their Misfortunes. 7. To invite to his Court, and encourage Artists, for the quick dispatch of publick and private business. 8. To Treat carefully, and with all civility, Embassadors sent from Foreign Princes, that they may see in Words and Deeds, the effects of a Princely and Generous Mind. 9. To Cherish and Embrace all, that he may engage them to him, to be the Bulwarks and Fortresses of his Kingdom. And these Rules well practised may serve other Kings, to render them great and happy.

The King has a Privy, or Supream Council of the Learned Mandarins in his Pallace, who are called his Council of State, which is the most Honourable Dignity in the Kingdom; these consult and transact all the weighty Affairs, and these have several Magnificent Halls in the Pallace, wherein they meet, to consult according to their Degrees; and when he advances any one to this Dignity, he adds to his Name, the Name of one of these Halls. Besides these, there are 11 other Tribunals of Mandarins, 6 for Ecclesiastical and Civil, and 5 for Military Affairs: The first of these are called *Lo-pu*, and the last *U-fu*, and these are of ancient Institution, the *Chineses* dating it 2000 Years before the Birth of Christ; and to these Tribunals People repair for the determining their Affairs, and for Redress; besides, they dispose of Offices and Trusts, and confirm Honour and Dignities. Their Power is great, for they have a jurisdiction almost over all that belongs to the Court, and it is absolute over all

the

the Provinces, ſo that they are much feared, and dreaded, becauſe they can place and diſplace at pleaſure, and examine into all Frauds and Abuſes to the Crown, and into Eccleſiaſtical matters. They are fearful of doing any injuſtice, by reaſon there is a Mandarin, in the nature of a Controller, or Overſeer to every Tribunal, who examins publickly or privately all that is done, and if he finds any injuſtice or diſorder, he is bound to make the King acquainted with it; he is called *Coli*, ſo that ſeldom any Corruptneſs or Partiality is found amongſt them, and if it be, the Offender is ſeverely puniſhed. There are ſome other dependent Tribunals in *Pekim*, and to every one of the Provinces there belongs a Supream Tribunal, which has the overſight of inferiour Courts, ſo that buſineſs is managed and diſpatched with little difficulty.

They have made prodigeous Works in this Country to ſecure the Rivers within their bounds, yet notwithſtanding, ſometimes encreaſed by the violent Rains, they break out to the deſtruction of vaſt numbers of People, Cattle, and Houſes, as it happened in the Year 1668, after violent Rains, which almoſt deſtroyed the new City of *Pekim*, and they had much ado to ſecure the Flood from overturning the Walls of the old City, and in this Deluge which was accompanied by an Earthquake, for it had a long time before been a very dry Seaſon, near a Million of People periſhed; and though many got upon Trees, Hills, and Out-Houſes, they were there ſtarved for the moſt part, for want of Boats to fetch them off, and the rapid Flood tumbling Rocks along with it, broke down two Arches of the Famous Bridge, which is about a Furlong over: This Bridge is the moſt beautiful in *China*, but not the largeſt; the River overflowing is called *Hoen Ho*, or the Muddy River, becauſe the rapidneſs of its Stream, carries with it a great quantity of Earth, tore from the Banks and Windings, which renders it muddy all the Year, but it is little Navigable, by reaſon of the many Cataracts, or Falls in it; yet

for

for bringing vast Stores to *Pekim* from the Southern Provinces, a Canal is opened 3500 *Chinese* Furlongs, through several Provinces, accommodated with 72 Sluces, every one having large Folding-Gates, and these are only open in the day time, some of them being very difficult to pass with Barks of great Burthen, because the Falls are great; but they are drawn up against the Stream by the strength of 4 or 500 Men, and let down in the like manner, with many Ropes fastned to them, to prevent setting on the Piles, or plunging, and they are guided by long Poles, with Iron Heads at the end. The Chanel begins at *Tum Cheu*, about 2 Leagues and an half from *Pekim*, where there is a River, with the Currant of which, Vessels drive till near the Sea, and then it falls into another, through which Vessels Sail, till they come to the Chanel; and Sailing about 25 Leagues, a Temple presents it self, called *Fuen Hui Miao*; or, *The Temple of the Spirit that divides the Water*; hither they Row against the Stream, but when they come at the Temple they Row with the Stream, for on the East-side, about half a days Journey is a large Lake between high Mountains; this Water swells a great River that bent its course towards the Sea on the East, but they stopped up the out-let, and with prodigious labour cutting through the Mountain, opened a Canal by which they brought the Water to the Temple; in that part they hollowed 2 other Canals, one towards the South, and another towards the North, with so true a proportion and regular Line, that the Waters coming to the middle before the Temple, take leave of each other, one running to the North, and the other to the South in one and the same Canal, which is very admirable, and discharges it self into a large rapid River, called the *Yellow River*, the Water being so coloured by the yellow Earth on the Banks, and Gold coloured Sand and Slime at the bottom; upon this River they Sail 2 Days, and then entering another Pass to another Canal running towards the City of *Hoaingan*, and running by and through ma-

ny Cities, comes to *Taincheu*. The vaſt Wall of *China* that excludes the *Tartars*, is no leſs to be look-ed on as a work of Wonder; it runs from Eaſt to Weſt, and in length 405 *Portugueſe* Leagues, mak-ing 33 Degrees 10 Minutes, reaching from the Ci-ty of *Cai yean*, Seated in the extreamity of the Country, called *Leao Tum*, to that of *Canſo*, or *Can cheu*, Seated on the borders of the Province of *Xenſi* in a ſtreight Line, for ſhould the turnings and windings in the Mountains be reckon'd it would make much more; it is guarded by 1327 Towers and Fortreſſes; the Wall is 2 Fathom thick, and 4 in heighth, built moſtly of Stone, though in ſome places Brick appears, where it is ſuppoſed to be mended or altered, ſo that were it vigilently guard-ed, and no Treachery, which too often happens by the Captains of the Watches, being bribed with part of the Plunder, the *Tartars* would be too feeble to ſurmount it, for upon this Wall and Frontier only, there are 90254 Men kept in Arms and Pay, and thoſe that keep the Watch-Towers give the Signal of the Enemies approach by a Flag in the day time, and in the Night by Fire.

Theſe are but part of the King's Forces, for the Auxiliaries that lie ready to march to their aſſiſtance, are in a manner innumerable, for the Horſe only a-mount to 989167, and the Foot are many more, their Pay yearly amounting to 5034714 Livres, though they in ſome ſort maintain themſelves by their Induſtry, and no doubt as great, if not a great-er number guard on the other Borders, ſo that there are ſeveral Millions in Pay, for in the Kingdom there are 2357 Fortified Places, beſide a great ma-ny that are Garriſoned upon almoſt inacceſſible Mountains and Rocks, that being ſtrong by nature, have no Walls.

In the 15 Provinces there are 332 Famous Bridges, 2096 Mountains famous for their being cut into the ſhapes of Monſterous Idols, for their Fountains, Minerals, or Fruits, their Waters, ſuch as are Lakes full of Fiſh, hot Fountains wonderful-

ly

ly Medicinal, large Navigable Rivers and Streams, are 1472.

There are 1099 pieces of Antiquity to be seen, as Statues, Paintings, and curious Vessels: 1159 Towers and Triumphal Arches erected at Sundry times, to the Memories of those that were renowned in War, Learning, or Virtuous Actions; 272 Publick Libraries, stored with variety of Books, many of them covered with Gold and Silver Plate, adorned with precious Stones.

There are yet remaining entire 709 Temples, which the *Chineses* have Erected at several times to the Memory of their Ancestors, of curious Architecture. large and beautiful, and the Names of those to whose Memory they were Erected affixed on Pillars, and in these the several Families of the deceased Assemble at a prefixed Day, and prostrate themselves on the Ground, in token of Love and Veneration; then they burn Incense, and afterwards make a splendid Feast at several Tables, richly set forth.

They account 480 Temples of Idols exceeding Rich and Magnificent, beside many of lesser Note, attending on these are 300000 *Bouzes*, a kind of a Religious Order amongst them, some Married, and others not permitted, besides a great number that Travel up and down, called *Licentiates*, having their Licenses to Authorize them from the Tribunal of the Ceremonies.

Their Mausoleums, or Tombs, are very stately, to the number of 680, besides many of lesser Note; but they Bury their Dead after they have kept them as long as they please without the Cities, according to the manner of the Eastern Countries; their Coffins are very Rich, so that one of them sometimes costs 1000 Crowns. The Catacombs of the Grandees are stately Arched Vaults in Mountains, or Plains, over which, when the Body is in, they raise a little Mount, planting Fragrant Trees in good order on it: Before this they Erect a large Altar of white polished Marble, or Alleblaster, fixing Candlesticks,

dlesticks, one upon it, and one on each side. They Place Statues, or Figures, in Rows, representing a History of the deceased's Actions, and are very curious Artists in resembling Passions of Grief, Joy, Fear, *&c.* to the Life. The *Chineses* reckon 3036 Men Famous for their Virtues and Valour; Two hundred and eight Virgins, and Widows, Renowned for Piety, Chastety, *&c.* whose Memories are Celebrated in their Stories, and Poesies; they are also honoured with Titles, Temples, Inscriptions, and Triumphal Arches.

There are in this Kingdom 32 Princes, or petty King's Pallaces, resembling that of the King's, but much less. The Cities are Govern'd by Mandarins, as I before hinted; and when any one gets the King's Letter to the Tribunal to be admitted, the Names of the Cities are Written on thin Boards which are cast into a Vessel, and on their Knees they draw, and he whose Name comes up is allotted the Government of that City; yet there is jugling in this, for the Tables are so, where Money is given, that they seldom fail of a rich City, though it is but for a set time, *viz.* 3 Years, least they should corrupt Justice, or gain on the Affection of the People to raise Rebellion; however, they are Reverenc'd like petty Kings, and abundance of Royal Hosteries are built in Cities, and on the Roads, to entertain them in their Travels, at the King's Charge, where every thing is in a Magnificent readiness, when they know there is a Mandarin on the Road: There is also places for the Entertainment of the Curriers, and to furnish them with fresh Horses.

The Mountains yield Gold and Silver, and therefore the Country is stored with Treasure, though Gold indeed is more a Merchandize than a Coin amongst them; the presents therefore that they make are excessive, as 10, 20, or 30000 Crowns at a time. The King eats in Gold Plate, and all his Nobles, and those that are invited, at a vast number of Tables in Silver and Porcelain, so that the Furniture

niture at a great Feast amounts to 5 or 6 Millions, for there are Cups set with Diamonds, and other Stones of vast value; some are entire Stones, very Rich, and the Noble imitate the Court, as far as their Ability will allow them, they being very Rich, for they usually get in their 3 Years Government, as Viceroys of Provinces, or Mandarins of Cities, a Million of Crowns; and those that are of the Council of State, called *Calaos*; or, the upper Tribunals, much more by Bribery; for though they protest against it, and there are severe Laws in this Case, no Office passes the Seal without a considerable sum of Money underhand.

There is in this Kingdom vast quantities of Copper, Tin, Iron, and other useful Metals, of which they make great Guns, Idols, Statues, Dishes, Cups, and other Things: their Workmanship is very fine; of Copper and Tin they make vast quantities of Money, with little holes in the middle to string the pieces, and so they pass as ready told, in 500, or 1000 on a String; and 1000 of their Deniers is given for a *Chinese* Tuel, or Crown. Their Exchange is made in Bank, or places appointed for that end; on one side this Money is the Name of the Reigning Prince, and on the other that of the Tribunal that caused it to be Coined. Their Gold and Silver is not properly to be called a Coin, as being only cast into Ingots like Boats of different weights and value; some of those of Gold are vallued at 20 Crowns, and those of Silver at half a Crown, and some more.

When they bury their Dead they burn a great many gilded Ingots, which they call Loans of Gold and Silver, vainly fancying the Ashes turns to Copper in the other World, and serves their Friends to purchase Houses, Horses, and Provision, likewise to bribe the evil Spirits that they should not injure them, and that so the good Spirits may be Fee'd, to hasten their Transmigration, suffering their Souls to enter into Men, and not into Beasts.

There is abundance of curious white Silk, and Wax in *China*, and by reaſon of the vaſt Silk Manufactures made all over the Kingdom, the Ancients ſtiled it the Silken Kingdom, ſo that many Veſſels and Caravans are loaded with it for other Countries. Moſt of the Men, nay, the very Lackeys, and the Women all of them wear Silk, and the richer ſort have it Embroidered with Gold, Silver, Pearl, and other Ornaments.

The fine Wax peculiar to *China*, is not made by Bees; but a little Fly as big as a Flea lays an Egg that breeds a Worm, which piercing the Wax Trees to the Pith it iſſues out and hangs upon the Branches like drops of Dew, and by the Sun and Wind, is hardened and whitened, in ſuch quantities, that it ſerves the Court, the Nobility, and Temples, to make fine tranſparent Tapers.

Furs are in this Kingdom in vaſt quantities, and almoſt every one wears a finer or coarſer ſort of them, as they are able, for the Linning of their Garments, Seats, Chairs, Couches, *&c.*

To mention the ſeveral ſorts of Fruits and Proviſions, would be almoſt endleſs, they have allmoſt all we meet with in *Europe*, and a large addition of what we have not in variety of Fruit, eſpecially of delicious taſt. During 3 Months of Winter, they have vaſt ſtore of Game, and on the Rivers they pitch Nets 200 Yards long, and ſet dead Wild fowl on their feet, as if they were alive, for ſtakes to decoy the living; as Ducks, Pheſants, Wild Geeſs, *&c.* of which, and other Fowl, ſo many are taken, that they are ſold for little or nothing. They have 3 ſorts of Bears which they Hunt, one called the Man bear, the other the Dog bear, and a third the Pig bear, becauſe their Snouts and Faces a little reſemble theſe. Their Paws boiled and well ordered, are a great dainty among the *Chineſes*, and the *Tartars* much admire their Fat, which they eat: Theſe are ſcarce, but for Deer, wild Boars, Ellands, Hares, Conies, and the like, they are in vaſt plenty in moſt of the Provinces.

After

After all this, the Weather is piercing cold in the Winter Seaſon, and very hot in the Summer; ſo that in the former, they keep Fires in Stoves, and in the latter, retire the better ſort into cool Vaults and Cellers. Their Firing is a kind of a Stone-coal dug in the Mountains, and ſometimes in the Plains, except in Woody Countries, and they are at great charge in Carriage: It gives as violent a heat as Charcoal, and the heat is very laſting. They ſleep on Mats, or Carpets, and in the Day-time ſit together in cluſters on them, the better to preſerve the Heat, for the Colds are ſometimes very Exceſſive; the richer ſort have Beds, and the Stoves are under the floors of their Rooms, which ſometimes by reaſon of the exceſſive Heat take Fire, burning the Houſe, and ſurprizing in the ſuddain Flames, all that are ſleeping in it.

The *Chineſes* that they may be Magnified by Strangers, take a pride to be very civil to them, and give them the upperhand at their Feaſts, ſeating themſelves according to their Degrees; yet the Eldeſt give place to thoſe who come from the remoteſt parts.

When any Ambaſſador arrives from the *Dry*, his Embaſſy is allowed till his departure: he is furniſhed with all manner of Proviſions, Horſes, Letters, Barks, and lodged in the Royal Palace, where every two days the King ſends him a ſumptuous Entertaiment of all ſorts of Varieties. They take great care, and a kind of pride in their Apparel, the poor among them going very Neat and Decent. The learned Men affect a grave Geſture, and count it a ſin to appear in any thing contrary to the Rules of decent Behaviour and Urbanity.

The Women affect Modeſty, Chaſtity and Honeſty, keeping themſelves covered, ſo that when they preſent any thing to their neareſt Relations, they lay it down, their Hands being covered with their Sleaves, and retire with Silence: They rarely ſtir abroad, and are exceeding Submiſſive and Obedient towards their Husbands, there being nothing,

they command them, though never ſo difficult, but they willingly Enterprize.

Upon their Feſtival Days, they have a great number of Illuminations, and Fire-works, repreſenting divers Creatures and Figures in the Air; ſo that on a Hill at a diſtance, one would think all the Cities were on Fire. The Lanthorns in the Pallace, and Royal Halls, are vaſtly Big, *viz.* 20 Cubits, and ſometimes more in Diameter, holding 100 Lamps, or Tapers, ſo that they caſt a glorious Light, and Figers turning in them by the force of the Smoak, repreſent in ſwift motions many curious Actions, as Fights, Dances, Hunting, Hawking and the like.

CHAP. XIX.

Travels through Tartary to Muſcovy, *and what is obſervable on the way in thoſe vaſt deſert Countries; the Nature of the People; their manner of living, with a particular Diſcription of* Aſtrakan, *and the Sturgeon fighting in the River* Volga.

HAving viſited *China*, and learned what I thought convenient, for it is not good to be too Inquiſitive, for fear of being taken as a Spy. I began to be weary of the Fatigue, and of ſo long an abſence from my Native Country, wherefore I reſolved to take the firſt opportunity to return home, and it was not long e're Fortune befriended me to paſs by Land; (for the way by the *Caſpian* Sea is very dangerous, for that little Sea, or rather great Lake, is full of Flats and Shallows, very tempeſteous in moſt Seaſons, and has a great number of Rocks in

in it, with dangerous Eddies, or Whirl-pools, by reason about 100 large Rivers discharge themselves violently into it;) for there was a Caravan going from *Pekim* to *Bokara*, and in it I entered my self with all Necessaries for my Journey, and in 15 days the Weather being very fair, and our Stages large, we reached *Soezi*, the last Town of *China*, without the great Wall; and here I stored my self with abundance of good Ruburb that grows in their Gardens, which stood me in much stead when I came into the cold Countries; and from hence we journeyed mostly *North-west*, and the principal Towns in our way, was *Baretola*, *Kechemire*, *Kiboal*, *Samark*, and some others, which by reason of my Indisposition on the Road, I shall not undertake to describe. Let it suffice then, that the *Tartars* inhabit mostly this vast Track of Land; in some places very Mountainous, in others, vast Deserts and Forrest, the ground Sandy and Stony for the most part, and all along I could see Snow. On the tops of the high Mountains, though in the beginning of Summer, the People are Rude and Simple, most of them living by feeding Cattle, which they drive from one place to another, carrying their Wives, Children, and all they have along with them; pitching Tents in their Encampments, especially where they find pleasant Springs, and stay there till the Grass is Eat up, and then they remove: The *Tartars* are a very numerous People, and spread a vast track of Land in *Asia* and *Europe*, and Principally they are thus divided, *viz.* The *Precopenses*, *Asialica*, *Antiqua* and *Cathur* from their Principal Provinces, which may be termed, though there are other numerous little Divisions too many here to mention; and though they are a cruel kind of People, our Caravan met with no on-set by the way, though we see numerous Hoards of them on either hand. As we see their Houses are mean and inconsiderable, and their Diet mostly raw Flesh in many places, and above all, they are great lovers of the Fat of Bears, yet they give not their Minds

so

ſo much to Robberies as the *Arabs*, or other untractable Nations, becauſe few of them know the uſe of it, or at leaſt have no great eſteem for Money; ſome are *Idolars*, and ſome *Mahometans*.

This Track abounds in Furs, and there are ſome Mines of Gold and Silver found in many parts, but they little regard Diging it; and ſo barbarous are they, that many of them dreſs their Children at great Feaſts, to entertain their Gueſs, as the choiceſt of Dainties; nor do they refrain from Feaſtings on their Dead: There are a great many ſtrong Stags and Harts I ſaw in my Paſſage, which they uſe to Ride, carry Burthens, and draw their Waggons, or Sledges. Mulbury-Trees grow in ſome places along the Roads, eſpecially bordering on *China*, which are laden in their proper Seaſons with Silk-worms that produce much Silk, but they little regard it, it being moſtly gathered by the *Banians*, who live ſcattered among them, who ſend it to *Perſia* and other Countries, and have rich Merchandize in return; for here the coldneſs of the Country obliges them moſtly to habit themſelves in Furs, and thick courſe Cloathings. They trade much in White and Black Fox Sables, Hart and Fawn Skins; they have vaſt Forreſts of Black Wood, wherein many huge Bears lurk to ſurprize Travellers, which made us keep cloſe together when we paſſed ſuch places, and have our Eyes about us, as well as our Fire-arms in readineſs; and ſo keeping the Road, though not without many turnings, and ruged ways, when we had paſſed *Samark*, and it brought us to *Bockar*, where I ſtaid ſome time to refreſh me, for I had been ill of a Flux by the way, which ſtill held me ſo, that I took no great pleaſure to make any curious remarks here, and had I done it, as I was informed, there is nothing worthy of Note in the Town, the Houſes being plain and low Built, the Streets crooked, and no Antiquities memorable. Here the *Moſcovites* and *Tousbecs Tartar* are driving a conſiderable Trade together in Furs, and other Commodities.

Having

Having here pretty well recovered, by the assistance of a *German* Physician, I found in this place, I thought, a convenient opportunity to pass to *Astrakan*, which in a few days, I had, passing part of the way in Sledges, drawn by Harts, that run with them very swiftly; and an other part, by taking Horse, there being a kind of a little Caravan, made up by the meeting of divers Travellers. The *Muscovites* use Sledges, that in the Winter they slide swiftly over the Snow and Frozen Rivers, having Beds in them, and covered over with Tilts like Waggons, so that they are a warm Convenience; notwithstanding in Winter, Travellers have been Frozen to Death in them.

Astrakan is Seated on the Great and Famous River *Volga*, which at 70 Mouths, or Channels, discharges its Water into the *Caspian* Sea, and so forcibly, that it keeps it stream unmixed with the Salt-water for many Leagues. In this River, the *Muscovites* have a great Fishery for Sturgeon, which they catch in abundance very large, so that the Eggs sometimes found in one of them, may weigh 100 Weight: As for the Flesh, they pickle up and send it into divers parts of *Europe*, some they press to make Oyl, and the Eggs they salt to make Ragous to serve them instead of Butter, which in *Lent* is denied them, and this is the Cavere so much used in many Countries. In the Summer, there are so many *Muskela's*, or *Sting Gnats*, about this River, that Passengers are miserably Stung and Blistered by them, though they wrap themselves up, and defend them all they can.

We were forced to stay before this City, till we obtained leave of the Governor for admittance; which after a little attendance, was granted: It is Seated in 48 Degrees *North* Latitude, in an Island of the *Volga*, 13 Leagues from the Mouth of the River, and appartains to the Great *Czar* of *Muscovy*. It is encompassed with a double Wall, without any other Fortification, except some few Towers, half Musket Shot one from an other. The Great Guns

planted

planted there are fine pieces, and about 80 in number, it ſtands low on gravelly Ground, ſo that the heat is exceſſive in Summer, and the People are conſtrained to Bath themſelves in cool Water in Troffs placed in Vaults; yet the Soil produces good Fruit of ſundry kinds, they have ſtore of excellent Mellions, eſpecially the Karpous, or Water Mellions, their Rhinds Green, but of a Roſey Red within, of a pleaſant taſt, cooling and delicate to quench Thirſt. There are divers ſorts of Grapes, of which they make a kind of pleaſant Wine, but it ſoon Sowers: All this while. no private Perſon dares touch a Grape till the Governour has made choice of them, and other Fruits, for the *Czar's* Table. There are divers Nations inhabiting here, drawn by the Convenieney of Trade, and the ſweetneſs of the Air. The *Armenians* entirely poſſeſs one Suburb, and the *Nogais Tartars* an other, which reſemble a City, being Fortified with Wooden Ramports, and the Deputy Governour Commands there; within the Encloſure ſtands a pretty convenient Moſque, but the Houſes for the moſt part are made of Bull-ruſhes, of which there are about 2000. They keep a Market in the Morning in their Quarter, and the *Maſcovites* keep theirs in the Evening, in the middle of their City; yet this City is often inſulted by the *Calmuc Tartars*, which conſtrains the Inhabitants for their better Repoſe, to ſend them Preſents, which the *Tartars* call a Tribute of Bread, Fiſh, Fleſh, and other Proviſions, and they drive a Trade with them for Furs and Horſes, of which they bring great plenty; beſides the *Muſcovites* are many times obliged to them, for their aſſiſting them with Men in the time of their Wars.

CHAP

CHAP. XX.

Travels in Muſcovy, *and Obſervations of what is worthy of Note; as to the Towns, Rivers, Mountains, Commodities, Heats and Colds, Laws, Religion, Manners and Cuſtoms of the People,* &c. *and from thence through* Poland *and* Germany *into* Holland.

HAving a deſire to ſee *Muſcovy*, and particularly *Moſcow*, the chief City, I made it my buſineſs to find an opportunity to leave *Aſtrakan*, and paſs thither.

As for this vaſt Conntry, it is bounded on the *Weſt* with *Lithuania* and *Livonia*; on the *Eaſt*, with *Tartary*; on the *North*, with the Frozen Ocean: on the *South*, with the *Caſpian* Sea, the *Ottoman* Empire, and *Paulus Meotis*. It is branched with many large Navigable Rivers, as the *Tanais*, *Borbiſtenes*, *Volga*, &c. It is divided into 9 Provinces, *viz. Novog*, *Radia*, *Valademira*, *Pleſcovia*, *Rheſen*, *Servia*, *Parmia*, *Condoria*, *Petroſa* and *Muſcovy*, though from this laſt, the whole Track takes its Denomination.

Towards the *Southern* parts, it is pretty plentiful of many things of Value, yielding Corn, Cattle, Furs, Flax, Hemp, Wax, Honey, &c. but the *Northern* parts lye very cold, the Earth being ſo long covered with Snow, that the Ground is chilled, and produces not its Fruits kindly; yet Furs are gotten off of White, Black and Red Foxes, Grey and Red Squrrils, Minever Ermins, Wolverin, or wild Dogs. The Woods which are generally Fur

and

and Birch, abound in Ravenous Creatures, particularly, Wolves and Bears, which in the extremity of Weather, pinched by Cold and Hunger, comes in great Clusters to the Villages near the Forest, and puts the Inhabitants to flight many times, killing and devouring them and their Cattle, so that at such times, by way of prevention, they are forced to be on their Guard. But as to these, and other matters of the like nature, I shall take them in course, as my Travels lay in this Country, which is of vast extent from *North* to *South*, if you measure from *Cola* to *Astrakan*, which bendeth somewhat *Eastward*, which is reckoned the length of it is accounted 4260 verst or ruff Miles, though one of them makes not above 3 quarters of our Miles though *Northward*. Beyond *Cola*, there is a large Country unto the River *Tromschua*, that runeth 1000 verst Miles, but the ridged Winter Frost renders it not much inhabited, and little fruitful in Summer. As for the Breadth, if one goes from that part of the Czar's Teritories, that lies farthest *West*, on the *Narve* side, to the utmost parts of *Siberia* Eastward, where are divers Garisons, it is 4200 verst Miles: But to come near as a Traveller, considering how to get the safest and easiest way to *Moscow*, it being in *June*, when the Rivers were open, I was perswaded to Embark on the *Volga*, which I did with a Merchant of that City, who shewed me a great deal of kindness, the Vessel being his own; for from *Astrakan* to *Moscow*, it is accounted 18000 verst Miles. We sailed till we came to the Mouth of the River *Cama*, which dischargeth its Waters into the River *Volga*, and so made our way by Water and Land to *Cazan*, which the *Muscovites*, a few Ages since took from the *Tartars*, and is the Metropolis of a Kingdom. It is a City of considerable Trade, it was formerly walled with Timber and Earth, but upon annexing the whole Kingdom to the Crown of *Muscovy*, the great Czar *Vasiliwich* walled it with Free-stone. The Building is not Stately, yet very Commodious, for the Inhabitants, who are a mixed People, as they are

on

on all the Borders; we lodged and refreſhed our ſelves here, and paſſed in a 11 days through a fine Country, well Watered, and very Fruitful, to a conſiderable fair Town, which we reached in 10 days, called *Niſnovogrod*, where *Occa* falls into the *Volga*. This is the head of a Shire, or County of that Name, and from hence by *Rezan*, and ſo paſſing a tedious journey through many difficult ways, we came to the River *Moſcow*, on whoſe Banks the City of *Moſcow* ſtands. I ſhould have told you I left my Merchant Trading up the River *Camaon*, on whoſe Banks are ſeveral and pretty Towns, but he took care to provide me a Guide, who accompanied me to *Moſcow*, the neareſt way over the Land, and to help me to Imbark where the Rivers offered to leſſen our Journey, for I did not think fit to fall directly down the *Volga* into the *Caſpian* Sea, which would little have furthered me.

Being arrived at the head City of *Moſcow*, I entered on the River ſide, and finding ſome *Engliſh* there, I was not long deſtitute of a Habitation, and being Evening when I entered, I thought fit to reſt that Night, and the next day went to take a view of the City, which is very large. The Form of it is in a manner round, with three ſtrong Walls, circling the one within the other, the Streets lying pretty commodiouſly within all the Heart or Center incloſed by the inmoſt Wall, is called the *Czar*'s Caſtle, or Pallace, very large in Circle; the Houſes of ordinary Perſons are but indifferently built with Timber, Loam and Mortar, covered with Boards or Bark of Trees; but the Houſes of the Nobles are pretty Sately. The Churches are many, and they are Adorned on the tops with Globes of Copper, and guilded Spires. That of *Blanceſhina* or *Bleſſedneſs*, is of curious Architecture, after the Faſhion of the *Greek* Churches, whoſe Tenents in Religion, the *Muſcovites* devoutly hold; the Church of St. *Michael* is nothing inferiour to it, but above all, the Cathedral called, *Our Ladies Church*, is large and ſtately; in it the Czars are Crowned by the Patriarch. The

Market

Market is kept in the Castle, or within the inward Wall, unless the River be Frozen over, and then it is partly kept thereon, and sometimes alltogether; so that upon the Ice bareing all sorts of Carriages, there appears to be a kind of a Fair, because the People bring vast quantities of Goods from remote places on their Heads. The Castle is on a rising Hill, well Watered and Fortified, and the Princes's Palace very conveniently contrived, but his Attendance upon publick Occasions, as at the Audience of Ambassadors, and the like, is more Magnificent, they being in great Numbers mostly Arrayed in Cloath of Gold and Silver, rich Furs, Velvets, Pearls and pretious Stones; Battle Axes of Gold are carried before the Czar, and his Robes exceeding rich of Goldsmiths Work, poudered with pretious Stones and Imbroderies of Pearl; their Feasts are served up in Dishes of Gold, the meanest Vessel being Silver, and both kinds very numerous. The Diet is choice, and well dressed, according to the *Russian* Fashion; their Drink is Wine, Meath, and sometimes strong *Aquavitæ*, which among them is alled *Rus* Wine.

In this City are still to be seen some Ruins of the Walls the several Fires have made, for I was told it contained 41500 Houses before the *Crim Tartars* reduced it to Ashes, *Anno* 1571. and in it destroyed 80000 People, and besides the Houses, 1500 convent Churches and Chapples. The *Poles* burnt it *Anno* 1611. and *Anno* 1676. an Accidential Fire happened Burning 20 days, but now Guards are appointed, to take care of Fire, and have Sallaries allowed them. There is one thing Admirable, which is a Bell raised in a large Tower; this Bell is 24 foot in height, and I was told, though it has been chipped off some Tuns of Mettle to make it ring better, that it weighs 176 Tun, and the Clapper 4 Tun, which is pulled by a Rope to sound it on particular occasions, for it cannot be raised by reason of its vast weight.

Pro-

Provisions are very plentiful here, as Fish, Fowl, Venison, Hares, and other Dainties; for the Woods, Rivers, and Lakes, which are very many and large, abound with these, and divers other useful Creatures, and in some parts of *Moscovy*, they draw their Sledges with Rain-deer, who do the Office of Horses, and run more swiftly. In my passing *Tartary*, I observed the like; they also used there great Dogs for the same purpose, and on the Borders, I met several riding on Elks.

I saw in this City many Bath-stones, and other Stones, which in the Winter are used in all places, which prevents their being pinched by the ridged Frosts, which are extream from *October* till *March*, accompanied with vast Snows, so that in that Season, there is little stiring abroad; for the Air is so piercing, that many have been stifled with it going out of their Houses, especially too early; and they report in that Season, it is frequent to find People frozen to Death in the Streets, and many are brought in Dead in Sledges frozen, though they have Beds there to lye on, and Tilt Coverings of Furskins over them; and for this time all the Rivers and Lakes are locked up, the Ice usually a Yard thick or more, yet they have store of Grain, as Wheat, Rye, Oats, Maize, *&c.* Plums, Pears, Cherries, black and red, Hurtle Berries, Apples, Rasps, Strawberries, and other delicate Fruits; for so the Almighty Wisdom has ordained it, that when the time of Thaw comes, which is usually the end of *March*, the Snow being cleared off the Ground, after that becoming dry in 14 days, Flowers, and all other products of the Earth sprout out and flourish incredibly; the Woods show a pleasing Green, and the Birds every where warble Mellodiously, especially Nightingals, who Sing more distinct and clear than any where else. The Storks busy themselves in Building in ruined Edifices, Hawks of all kinds in the Rocks and Sea-shoar-cliffs, Eagles in the rockey Mountains more *Northernly*; the Hare in Winter is White, sheds her Coat, and becomes the colour of ours.

The Lakes and Rivers are ſtocked with Swans, and variety of other Water Fowl, ſo that the face of things ſeem admirably changed, and the Country is ſo pleaſant, that thoſe who ſhould ſee it in Winter how Diſmal, and in a manner Deſolate it appears, (and knows no more) would conclude it impoſſible, or take it for quite an other Climate. Therefore I took my opportunity of Travelling here, whilſt it was ſeaſonable, for the dreadful Stories I heard of Winter, made me ſometimes allmoſt fancy I had an Ague in my Bones at the Relation of them; but the *Muſcovites* are hardy, anſwerable in a good degree to the Climate, and are more patient of Cold and Hunger than others, by which means they have the advantage of their Enemies, in firing them out by Winter Camps, and other Fateigues: For a *Ruſs* Soldier told me, he had often made his Bed in the Snow without any Tent, only hanging up his Mantle againſt that part, from whence the Weather drove, and turning his back to the Wind, his Drink being the cold Stream, with a little Oat-meal duſted into it; and the Forage for his Horſe, conſiſted in that Seaſon, of Twigs and Bark of Trees, and yet performed well the ſervice undertaken; others to harden and inure themſelves to the Cold the better, go abroad Hunting the Beaſts that bare the Furs, have come ſweating out of their Bath Stoves in the ridged Seaſon, and leaped Naked into a River, where the Ice has been broken; and it is a remedy among them againſt the Numbneſs of their Limbs, occaſioned by cutting Winds, to rowl themſelves in Snow; yet for all this, there are many tender among them, that cannot endure theſe hardſhips.

The Women are much confined at Home, and very Obliging and Obedient to their Husbands, yet ſo much Heat as they endure, being cloſed up in Winter, tending their Fires, makes them but of a bad Complexion, yet they mend their Faces by their Husbands allowance, with a Red and White Paint, but eaſily diſcernable; yet being the Faſhion, is not minded, and eſpecially, among the Vulgar: If a

a Man sometimes beats not his Wife, she will be Sullen, and fancy he loves her not, and they have a Custom, when they first pretend Courtship, among other Presents, to send a Whip to show the Woman what she has to trust to, if she prove Disobedient, and this they take more kindly than the rest; but I find these matters, though proper to be known, yet some digression from Travels, have drawn me to launch too far this way, therefore now I come something more home to the purpose.

The next chief City of *Moscovy* is *Novogrod*, pleasantly Seated, and a place of considerable Trade; the Building mostly of Wood, as generally the Building is in all this Country, the Streets in many places not paved, but planked with Furr, jointed and laid in so, that it shoots the Water off commodiously; it is the head of a Province or Shire, where the Court of Justice do determine matters, is held by a Duke and Dyack, the Latter acting in the nature of a Secretary; and these Courts are held in all chief Cities, but an Appeal lays from them to the Office of the four Chetfrids at *Moscow*, who are chief Judges of the four Quarters, or Divisions of the whole Country of *Muscovy*, each holding an Office for his District or Quarter, and all the Shires or Provinces apply themselves to the Office of that Lord of the Chetfrid they are under, then the matter is laid before the *Czar*'s Council, and what they Determine, is sent back to be put in Execution.

Vologda is an other principal City, seated on a River of that Name, where is a great Trade for Furs, Hides, Tallow, Corn and other Merchandize, bringing in a considerable Revenue in Customs and other Taxes to the Prince, who has a part in this an other places, for almost every thing that is sold, so that his Incoms are very great, accounted no less than 13 Millions of Rubbles a Year, and a Rubble is reckoned according to Exchange, a Mark *English*.

Voldomir is an other City of considerable Trade, and gives name to a Province; it is built very re-

gular, and pretty well Fortified, and is watered by a considerable Stream, at leastways very near it: But besides *Moscow*, the Towns or Cities of chief strength, are *Vobsko* and *Smolensko*, *Cazan* and *Astrakan* lying on the Borders, and defending the Country against the Inroads or Incursions of the *Tartars*. *Jaruslave*, an other fair City for its commodious Scituation on a high Bank of the *Volga*, is in great Esteem: The Country about it is exceeding Fruitful in Corn-pasture, Fruit-trees, and has a great Fishery on the River. In this City, they say, dwelt the *Russ* Prince *Vlademia*, Sir-named, *Jaruslave*, who at the Mediation of *Sneno*, the Dane, married the Daughter of our King *Harold*.

Perislave is a considerable City, commodiously built on the Banks of a great Lake, yielding in it abundance of Fish, and enriching it by Trade from such Towns as border on that Lake, or the Rivers that fall into it.

Restove may be numbered among the rest; for here is a great Trade for Furs, and other Commodities, bought up to disperse into other parts of *Europe*, and Merchants come hither as far as *Persia*, some say from *China*, beyond the great Wall built to exclude the roving *Tartars*, of which I have already spoke of. There are a great number of other Towns, the Country being mostly to the *Southern* parts full of them, but not so considerable as these I have named; for the Houses are of Wood, most without any Lime or Stone, built very close and warm, with Fur-trees plained and piled over one another, fastned together with Notches or Dents at every Corner; and between the Timber for warmness they stuff in Moss, and the Houses have Stairs leading out of the Yard into the Chamber, and this manner of Building seems more agreeable to the Country than any other, as being far warmer than Stone or Brick in the extremity of Winter, and in Summer, the Moss being pulled out of the Chinks, lets in the cool breathing Air to refresh them; and of this Timber, they have such plenty, that for a small

small matter a House may be Built with many Appendages, or Conveniences for Shops, Merchants, Ware-houses, or private Families, for 20 or 30 Rubbles, or little more; and when the Houses fall to decay, they store them considerably with Fireing and other Necessaries, as *Perma*, *Weclinda*, *Totam*, *Kentisma*, *Solovetsky*, *Ocona*, *Bombasey*, and *None-nosks*, are famous for their Salt-pits, where great quantities are made, and out of which the *Czar* has a considerable Revenue, as 3 *Russ* on every hundred Weight.

The Rivers that water this Country, besides what I have named, are *Wichida*, a long and large River which rises out of the Country of *Permia*, and falleth into the *Volga*. *Duna*, that empties it self into the *Baltick* Sea, by the Town of *Riga*. *Onega*, that falleth into the Bay of *Solovetsko*, ninety Verst from St. *Nicholas*. This River below the Town of *Cargo Polia*, meeteth with *Volock*, that falls into the *Finland* Sea, by the Town of *Yama*, so that from the Port of St. *Nicholas*, into the *Finland* Sea, one may go by Water to *Suchana*. This River floweth into *Duyna*, and so into the *North* Sea; there are abundance of Fish in it, and in the open Season it is in a manner covered with Water-fowl. *Duyna* is many hundred Miles long, which falleth *Northward* into the Bay of St. *Nicholas*, a Bay so Named by one *Chancelour*, an *English* Man, who first found a *North-East* passage to *Russia*, in 1553. and called the Bay St. *Nichola's* Bay, from an Abby Dedicated to that Saint standing near it; and upon notice of his arrival, was sent for with great Joy by the Czar to *Moscow*, whether he went on Sledges 1500 Miles, and was received in great Joy, and highly Feasted with great State and Magnificence, the Court appearing in all its Splendor overjoyed now in hopes of an open Trade by Sea, for before they were obliged to carry their Merchandize through the *Hastill* Territories of *Poland*, *Sweeden*, and other Countries, to ship them for these parts; and hereupon Ambassadors were sent to *England*, and a free Trade

granted with large Priviledges, whereupon a Company now called the *Muſcovy* Company, ſettled Factories at *Arch-Angel*, and other Towns adjacent, having Lands allowed them, and an Agent, or Conſul permitted to reſide at *Moſcow*, though ſince the *Dutch*, and other Nations, have found the way, and interloped upon them: This Bay lies in 64 Degrees *North* Latitude, yet the Country about it is very pleaſant in the open Seaſon, and in the River ſtands an Iſland called *Roſe* Iſland, where are Roſes Damask, Red Violets, and abundance of pleaſant Flowers and Fruits. There is a Monaſtery near it of 700 Monks, who live after the Greek manner, and have large In-coms, for they receive rent for the Lands lying many Miles round them. However, there is in this Country many deſarts and waſt places, eſpecially to the *Northward*, with rockey Shoars and craggy Mountains; but on the latter, they breed Goats, and a kind of wild Horſe, Volverins, or wild Dogs, but the latter moſtly in the Woods near the Rocks, they find a Fiſh called *Morſo*, a Sea Monſter, who by the help of his Teeth, clambers up to get his prey of Eggs that the Wildfowl lay in the Pits, and hollow places: his Teeth are about two foot long and better for uſe than Ivory, of which they make Knives and Sword-halfs, *&c.* They fancy that in purſuing theſe on the Ice, and the Flakes breaking away, ſome of their People were driven by the Currants and Winds on the coaſt of *America*, and ſtocked in a great length of time that large fourth part of the World, becauſe there is ſome reſemblance between them, but I fancy this opinion Groundleſs. They Hunt likewiſe the Seals on the Ice, and kill them by ſtriking them on their Noſes with Clubs. and make good Merchandize of their Skins, and the Oyl they get from them.

As for the Nobility of *Muſcovy*, they are four-fold; The Firſt are called *Udeimey Kna Zey*, and theſe are of chief Authority, as being the Ancient Nobility, that is, exempt or priviledged Dukes.

The

The second are the *Bojazens*, such as the Czar honoureth, besides their Nobility with the Title of Counsellors.

The third are the *Vayavodey*, or such as have been Generals of Armies, or done some great Exploits for their Country.

The Fourth and lowest degree are such as have the Title of *Knazey*, or Dukes, but descend from younger Brothers of the chief Houses; all of these have priviledges suitable to their Degrees, and make a considerable Figure.

The Parliament is held at *Moscow*, composed of the Clergy and Nobility, summoned by the Czar, who sits in his Throne in that Assembly, and others according to their Degree. Then the Dyack, or Secretary, reads what is purposed by the Prince to be propounded to them; the Patriarch, with his Bishops, and other Clergy, are hereupon required to give their Opinions first in order, who generally consent to what is propounded, and the Nobles agree with them, as thinking such Holy Men cannot Err; then is it drawn up and sent to be proclaimed as standing Law in the principle Cities and head Towns of the Empire. The *Moscovites*, as to their Religion are Christians of the Greek Church, very superstitious in their Worship; for they often in their Devotion beat their Fore-heads against the floors of their Churches, till they are Swelled, and sometimes Bloody; they pay a Veneration to Saints, and particularly, to St. *Nicholas*, whom they stile their Patron, they Reverence the Virgin *Mary*, St. *Peter*, and others. They have the Cross and Holy Water in high esteem among them, and their Bishops go in Procession to hollow the Rivers once a Year, at which time the People strive for the Water; many leap into it, and dip their Infants, though the weather be extream cold: This Water so Hollowed, is likewise given to the Sick, with a fancy it will restore them, or by cleansing, make them fit for an other World. They keep four *Lents*, and then they abstain from strongs Liquors, and all gross sort

of Food, as Fleſh, &c. they obſerve certain Vigils, watching in their Churches by Night, repeating Ariſons, and bowing their Fore-heads to the floor a certain number of times.

Their Marriages are celebrated as ours, but with ſome odd different Ceremonies, *viz.* The Bride ſtoops down and knocks her Head againſt the Bridegrooms Shew, in token of her Submiſſion and Obedience, and the Friends of the Bride bow to him; then they break Bread and Eat it among them, intimating that by this Marriage, the Friends on either ſide are united as the crumbs of Bread were in the Loaf, and that they are to account themſelves as one Man, and one Family, &c.

The Funerals of their Dead are very ſolemnly performed; they Waſh and Apparel the Body very neatly, then are their Mourners appointed for ſome days to Howl over it, and often to demand what was the occcaſion it died, ſeeing it wanted nothing of Wordly Goods, as Meat, Drink, Riches, &c. naming the ſorts and kinds, and then ſet up a hideous Lamentation, much like the wild *Iriſh*: If it be in the open Weather, it is put into a Grave in a few days, but in the hard Weather, when the Ground cannot be dug, they pile the Bodies up in a Houſe, they call God's Houſe, and when the Seaſon is practicable, every one fetches away his Dead, and buries it.

The *Muſcovites* are generally very Corpulent, and of a large ſize, ſtrong, and of late grown Dexterous in the feats of Arms, particularly Fire-arms; they have abundance of great Ordinance, ſome carrying Bullets two foot Diameter. They are curteous to Strangers, unleſs they get in Drink, and then they are very Rude and Miſchievious; and this they often do, for the Men and Women are exceſſive Drinkers, ſo that many have been Murthered by them in their drunken Revels; before Dinner they uſually drink a Cup of *Aquavitæ*, which they ſay, gets them a good Appetite, and after Dinner carouſe ſtoutly of Meath, and other ſtrong Liquors, and then go to ſleep on Benches.

The

The better ſort wear exceeding Rich Garments, as Scarlet or Velvet lined with Furs down to their Ancles, looſe like the *Greeks*, and under them Veſts or Waſtcoats of Cloath of Gold or Silk Imbroidered; the Scull of the 12 Caps Imbroidered with Gold, Silver or precious Stones, according as they are able, and over it a Cap or Bordering of Sables, Ermin, Minever, or the like: the Women, unleſs Head attire, are cloathed almoſt like the Men, with open Sleeves down to their Fingers; they wear Girdles Imbroidered, or Plated with Gold and Silver, but with the poor Mouſack, or Country Peaſant, tho' he keeps the Faſhion it is as hard as with us; his Garments are courſe Cloath, or Sheepskin, with the Wool on, but every one has a differently ſuiting to Winter and Summer, for in the Latter Seaſon it is very hot, more then commonly in *England*, yet it laſts but *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*. They much delight in Muſick, tho' it be but Indifferent, for I heard nothing like that of other nations whilſt I remained amongſt them; as for Learning the lower degrees affect it not, addicting themſelves to Husbandry, and Handicrafts; very obedient they are to their Prince, never diſputing his Commands, or Injunctions, what ever they be, paying their Taxes and Cuſtoms, tho' ſomewhat heavy, very chearfully. If in a Law controverſie the Judge cannot decide it, he demands if they will kiſs the Croſs on their Affirmation, or denial; if the Defendant does it, he is acquitted of his Debt, or Injury done; if both require it, then they draw Lots, and he that has the better Lot, is only allowed it, and concluded to be in the right. But in Criminal matters they uſe Tortures, and thoſe very ſevere ones, to extort confeſſions, but if the party hold out againſt them he is acquitted. They have one ſort of Execution very odd, which is, by putting Criminals under the Ice to be ſmothered in the Waters, but cannot be done at all times, wherefore they have many more, as Hanging, and the like.

Theſe

These are the Principal matters I observed, or was Informed of in this Country, worthy to be placed in a History of this Nature; and now fearing to be Winter locked after my having been in so many warm Regions, I bethought me of Removing nearer home, because the cold Season was approaching, wherein I was very sensible, it would be very Incommodious for a Stranger to travel in these parts, and therefore I took an opportunity of a Caravan going for *Poland*, part of which Country I passed, but had little or no time to take a survey of it, only thus much I shall say in General. The *Borhistenes* bounds it from the *Muscovite* Empire on the East, on the West it has the *Vistual*, on the North the *Baltick* Sea and *Sinus Trinitus*, on the South *Hungary*; and is divided into 10 Provinces, viz. *Luconia*, *Lithunia*, *Vollina*, *Samogita*, *Pedelia*, *Russia*, *Nigra*, *Podlasia*, *Mosovia* and *Poland*; and the Latter giving the Country its generally accepted Name. These Provinces are Branched with several Navigable Rivers, as *Vistua*, *Raben*, *Bog*, *Mimel*; its Metropolis is *Cracow*, or *Craconia*, where usually the King has his Residence. It is an Elective Kingdom, and at present the Regal Lot by free choice of the Nobility and Gentry, is fallen on the Valian and Renowned Duke of *Saxony*, who is crowned King of *Poland*, and has received the Homage of the greater part of the *Poles*. *Cracow* is Scituate on the Banks of the River *Vistua*, Navigable 400 Miles, being as it were Encompassed with distant mountains, and fortified with strong Walls; the Buildings are very fair. This Country produces Tar, Rosin, Pitch, Wax, Honey, Barly, Oats, Amber, Tallow, Hides, Minerals, and other Commodities; and therein by Trading are found the Commodities of divers other Nations: we stayed not here, but passing some other Province Entred *Germany*, by the Way of *Hungary*, *Austria*, &c.

This Famed Empire is bounded on the North with *Denmark*, and the *Danish* Seas; on the East with *Prussia*, *Poland* and *Hungary*; on the South with

with the *Alps*; on the West with *Flanders*, *Holland*, &c. The Cities and Towns of this Empire may be properly divided into 3 parts, as first, the *Hans* Towns, that enjoy large Previledges and Immunities, about 70 in Number. 2. Those called Imperial Cities, by reason of their great Privileges above the rest, in Coining Money, bargaining, acknowledgement of Subjection, unless to the Emperour, whom they acknowledge their Protector, and pay him Annual Tribute so. And *3dly.* those under the Electoral Princes, which are commonly called Principalities; the chief Rivers are the *Danube*, and *Rhine*; the first runs about 1500 Miles, and receives 58 Navigable Rivers to swell its Stream, and at last falls into the Black Sea: the second passes thro' *Germany* and *Belgia* 800 Miles, and falls into the *German* Ocean.

This large Country produces Silver Mines, Copper, Lead, Tin, Iron, Corn, Wine, Allum, Quick Silver, Linnen, Woollen, Linnen-Stuffs, Silks, store of Cattle, and many other Commodities? and from hence by Land and Water I reached the Low Countries, and briefly, I so directed my way, that I cam to *Amsterdam*, the chief trading City in the Province of *Holland*. It is seated on the River *Tay*, which on the North side of it, flows like a large Sea; when on the South the River *Amster* running through 3 Lakes, entereth its Streets, and falleth into the River *Tay*; and by the Addition of a new City to the old, it is become very Commodious, and Strongly fortified; and in it are to be found the Commodities of almost all Nations, tho' the Country produces nothing very considerable of its own, but these things come by Navigation, for most of the Inhabitants are Merchants, who's Goods are brought by Vessels to their Doors, and Warehouses; and the People are generally Frugal, Industruous and Rich.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

A Voyage from Amſterdam *in* Holland, *to* Cales *in the* Spaniſh *Dominion, and* Thence *to* America; *giving an Account of what happened on the Sea, and in ſome Iſlands, touched at*, &c.

BEing at *Amſterdam* I began ſeriouſly to conſider of my Travels, and whilſt I Ruminated on many things, a ſtrange fancy came into my Head, that I had not compleated my firſt undertaking, in viſiting the ſeveral Parts of the World, becauſe I had not been in *America*; though the fatigues and dangers I had run thro' might have been a ſufficient Motive to have put a ſtop to my further Progreſs in ſtrange Countries, and give me ſatisfaction enough to have returned home; but the report of the Golden Mountains, and other things, egged me on, made me ſeek for an opportunity to paſs to *Cales*, where I doubted not but by one means or other, to get a Paſſage into the *Spaniſh Indies*, for that was it I Aimed at; for the other I underſtood are little conſiderable, as to Travellers, and have nothing Extraordinary to be found in them, and beſides are moſtly very well known to my Countrymen: therefore in deſcribing *New-Englaud*, *Virginia*, *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, &c. I ſhould have furniſhed their Curioſity with nothing that is rare, and new to them. I had not waited a Week before an opportunity offered, and I Embarked with ſuch neceſſaries, as I had procured. Entering the Bay of *Biſcay*, we were taken with a violent Storm, and ſprung our Mizen; it held us for 24 Hours, ſo that every moment we thought we ſhould become a prey to *Neptune*'s Watery fry, and this Storm was

was more terrible, and threatned more danger than any I had seen before, which made me repent my attempting so rashly, as thinking God was angry with me for my presumption, and then concluded if I could get safe ashoar I would rest quiet, with what I had seen and felt; the Storm at last blew over, and then a fresh gale, Providence so ordered it, that we reached the desired Port.

Being now on Land again at *Cales*, or *Cadiz*, in the Dominion of the King of *Spain*, such is man's frailty, I found my desire of Travelling not so much quenched, as in the Tempest I fancied it. A secret Inclination promised, and urged me on, that seeing I had made so many weary steps in 3 parts of the World, I should now venture upon the proposed fourth, held to be Larger and Richer than any of the other three, and as fortune would throw it in my way, to make me more resolved on it, a *Spanish* Merchant whom I had been Intimately Acquainted withal in *London*, I renewed my Acquaintance with him, and he Entertained me very civilly, but when I opened my Mind, and unbosomed my Intentions, he told me it would be a very difficult undertaking, because the Officers of the Port had very strict Orders not to permit Strangers to Embarque for the *Spanish Indies*, least they might be sent thither as Spies to discover the Havens, and Strength of the Forts, and other things that might be prejudicial to the Government. I told him I had no such Intention, that curiosity was only to inform my self, as a Travellor, of what was rare to be observed in a World, which the alwise God had so Admirally framed and ordered, and when I gave him a general account in what Parts I had been, and showed him my Papers of Memorandums, and curious Remarks, he was satisfied, promised to do his Endeavour for the furtherance and security of my passage, and to furnish me with Money sutable to the Country, upon Bills I gave him to receive by Exchange in *London*; and then he let me know he was a Part-owner in one of the Ships,

Ships, that was to accompany the Galeons, called the St. *Johns D' Ulua*; and to be brief, when the Fleet was ready to Sail, he gave the Master private orders to conceal me in his Cabin, and use me as a puculiar friend of his. I had pretty well learned the *Spanish* in *England*, which with little more attention I doubled, not to Improve so well in my Voyage as to be taken for a *Spaniard* among the Native *Spaniards* of *America*, who, I was Informed, but corruptly spoke the Language of old *Spain*. In a little time a warning Piece was fired for the Fleet to weigh Anchor, and tho' our Ship was narrowly searched, I so well wraped my self up in a Ticking, and lay instead of a Bolster at the Bedshead, that I was not discovered, tho' they turned up the Quilt, and other covering to see if any had absconded under them, that were not Licensed to depart.

Anchors weighed, and the Wind being fair, we set Sail with a prosperous Gale till we came to *Golfo d' Yeguas*, a very turbulent Sea, where the Ships and Galeons rowled and tottered extreamly, the Waves dashing violently, by reason of an Eddy occasion by a current that set into it, and the Galleon who went only a Convoy, having convey'd us thus, left us as concluding we were out of danger; especially of the *Barbary* Corisaries, and then by the Masters advice I showed my self on the Decks, as not fearing to be carried back again, or hindered in my further passage; and having the Wind constantly favourable, we steered our course without meeting with any thing Remarkable, till we made the Land of *America*, about 6 Weeks after we set out from *Cales*. Here I saw many Dorados, or Golden Fish, sporting in the Water, so called, because their Skins are of the Colour of Gold, and the Sailers with Hooks and Lines catched a great many of them: they Eat something like a Herring, but more short and Sweet. The first Land we stood in with, was *Desseada*, or as the *Spaniards* have named it, *The desired Land*, as being first found

found by *Collumbus*, when he diſcoverd the Weſtern *Indies*, but paſſing by it we ſtood with another Iſland, called *Margalanted*; Paſſing by that and *Dominica*, we arrived at *Guadalupe*, where we before deſigned to Refreſh ourſelves, and caſting Anchor in a ſafe Road before the Iſland, as many as would, had leave to go on aſhoar. The *Indians* who Inhabit it, no ſooner ſaw our Ships, which they had long waited for, and Expected by their Recoining the Courſe of the Moon, which is the account of the Months they keep, but they came running to the Shoar with Proviſions to wellcome and refreſh us; which were Sugar Canes, Plantons, Tortois, and ſome Fowl, and for it they received Knives, Beads, and ſuch like Trifles; and many Rowed to the Ships in the Canoes, Boats clouterly made like Troughs out of the main body of a Tree. Theſe People were naked Except a cloath to hide their Priveties, and many of them like the Antient *Britains* had ſcarified on their Faces, and other Parts, the Figures of Flowers, Suns, Moons, Stars, Birds, Beaſts, and the like; and rings in their Noſe, which they looked on as their chief Ornament. They are Idolaters, worſhipping the Hoſt of Heaven. The Commanders gave ſome of them Wine, that came aboard, which they Eagerly coveted, but a little ſoon made them Drunk, and kick up their heels on the Decks, as being only uſed to drink Water, and a Liquor that Diſtills out of the Plantain Tree. Yet for all this kindneſs, we could not but ſuſpect they Murthered two of our men, who went into the Woods to gather wild Fruit, for tho' we ſearched and ſtayed for them, they returned not, nor could be found, which made the reſt more cautious to venture too far.

Leaving this Iſland we Sailed within ſight of the Land of *Puerto Rico*, and then of St. *Domingo*, a very large Iſland, and here the Ships ſeparated to the ſeveral Ports they were bound, as *Havana*, *Honduras*, *Jucatan*, and others; yet we kept together 4 Sail, being bound for the *Mexicaian* Province

vince, and came into the Sound, where we found the Sun, it being in *Auguſt*, exceeding hot, and afflicted us the more becauſe we were becalmed, and one of the Sailers in the Evening leaping into the Sea to cool himſelf by Swiming, was unfortunately ſeized on by a Monſterous Fiſh, which they called a Tiburon, a kind of Crocadil, that pulled him under Water, and devoured him; who's ſurprizing Tragedy became a warning to the reſt, yet hoping to be revenged, we let down two large Hooks, faſtned back to back, with a ſtrong Rope, and Baited with a ſtone of fleſh, and took one of theſe Fiſh, but not the Murderer, as we found by his Gorge, when we opened him; he was as much as Sixteen men could Hawl on the Deck, tho' they let down a nooſe Rope under him to hold him faſt hampered; he proved to be 12 yards long, and beingkilled the *Spaniards* cut him up, and ſalted part of his fleſh, which had ſomething of the Taſt of Beef in it, being very firm and hard; and ſoon after a freſh gale Springing up, and we had ſailed a few Leagues, the man at the Topmaſt-head cryed out, Land, which did not a little rejoyce us, for the hot weather on thoſe broad Seas had rendred us faint and ſickly, but it being near Sunſet, and the Coaſt dangerous to enter on in the night time, we lay off till the next morning, and then ſtood into a part rockey on either ſide, and preſently diſcovered it to be *Vera Crux*, otherwiſe called St. *John d' Ulua*, and came ſo near in 6 Fathom Water, that by a Cable we faſtned our Ship, that entered foremoſt by Cable Ropes, to the Rings that were placed for that purpoſe in the Wall of the Fort, which we ſaluted with our Guns. In this place *Hernando Cortz*, the famous *Spaniſh* Captain, firſt entered, when he made his Conqueſts in *Mexico*, ſinking his Ships that his Souldiers might be the more reſolute in the undertaking, as having all hopes of returning cut off, and with a Handful of men did ſuch Exploits, that made

made the World Amazed, and this being the Port to which our Ships were bound we went Ashoar.

CHAP. XXII.

Travels from St. John D' Ulha *to the great City of* Mexico, *describing the Towns in the Way, Countries lying about them; with many other things and Relations, Antient and Modern; from the first Conquest made by the* Spaniards, *to this present time.*

THE proper name of this Sea-port Towns is St. *John d' Ulha*, the other *Vera Crux*, being given to it from the old Haven or Harbour of *Vera Crux*, lying 6 Leagues from it; for that proving dangerous for Ships to ride at Anchor in, by reason of the violent North Winds, it was forsaken, and the *Spaniards* removed hither, as being more safe by the means of a Rock which skreens off that Wind: and here were the first Majestrates, Judges, Aldermen and Officers of Justice named. Great was the Concourse of the People when we landed, and the Religious, who have Monasteries here, received us in procession, because they understood there were some Missionaries on board, sent out of *Spain* to assist in converting the *Indians*, and upon the Account of some of them, who took particular notice of me, during the Voyage. I had a very good Lodging appointed me, and great Feasting was made with store of Fowl and Fish, of which the Coun-

try is very plentiful, and as a last Course Sweet meats and Chocolett were brought in; *Te Deum* was sung in the Cathedral Church, and some Shows presented, but my mind being bent an other way, I little minded these things.

I rested the day of Landing with my Companions, and the next took a survey of the Town, and places about it; I compassed it in 3 quarters of an hour, and found the Scituation to be on Sandy ground, except on the South West, where it is Mooriſh, and full of noisome Bogs at a little distance, which in hot weather causes it to be somewhat unhealthy: the People in it are generally Rich, and the Inhabitants may, as near as I could compute, be between 3 or 4000. The Houses, Churches and Cloisters are mostly built with Timber, the Streets are few, yet have intercourse by narrow Lanes, or other passages; so that it has been often much Indamaged by Fire: The Trade is considerable there from *Mexico*, as being the convenienteſt part also from *Cuba* St. *Domingo*, *Jucatan*, *Portoello*, and by the way of the latter from *Peru*, *Cartagena*, and all the Islands lying on the North Sea. There is a Castle on the Entrance, founded on a Rock, and another Rock that makes the Entrance of shipping unacquainted with the Harbour very difficult, each are the chiefeſt Strength of the Town, and under these the Ships lie safe at Anchor, sheltred against the fury of the North Wind, which is many times there very violent, so that the Houses in the Town Rock and Totter exceedingly, that the Strangers conclude they are falling on their Heads.

The next day I found a great many Mules brought by the Owners to be Lett, to such as had a mind to leave the place and Travel further. I embraced this opportunity, and sent on Board to bring my Baggage on Shoar, which I Laded on one of them, and retained another to ride on; and so taking leave of those whose Business or Curiosity detain'd them longer, I set forward to visit *Mexico*, a famed City,

City, and the chiefeſt in theſe parts, but at a conſiderable diſtance from St. *John de Vellun*. The Road from hence for three or four Leagues I found very Sandy, but open and convenient for Travelling, and without meeting with any thing remarkable, I came to *Oldvera Crux*, Inhabited by *Spaniards* and *Indians*; the *Indians* met us a conſiderable way from the Town, and offered us all the kind reſpect imaginable, ſounding their ruſtick Muſicks, and Dancing before us, Tuning their Voices, which was more Melodious than their Muſick; and indeed entring the place, we were very civily receiv'd as Strangers, the people crowding to ask what News from *Spain*, and of the Affairs of *Europe*, we ſatisfy'd their Curioſity as well as the time would permit, and then they brought us Flowers and Sweet-meats, and we preſented them with divers *European* trifles, of which they ſeem'd very fond, rather for the ſake of whence they came than for their value.

They Conducted us to the Market-place, which is in the middle of the Town, and made Arbours of green Boughs under two large ſpreading Elmes, for us to repoſe in and refreſh our ſelves, and thither brought us plenty of Sweet-meats, Diet-bread, and Chocolet, having before placed Tables and Benches for the purpoſe, and the *Indians* particularly Aſſembled about us in great numbers, welcoming us into the Country. This place is but of indifferent Building, and not of any conſiderable Trade, for want of a good Harbour; the Buildings are of Wood; and here I obſerve the Friars have a great Command over the people, for what they order them they immediately do, rendring to them profound Honours and Reſpects Having refreſhed our ſelves here, we gave the people Thanks for their Civility, and ſo took leave, reaching a little before Night a ſmall *Indian* Town, where we Lodged, and found very good Entertainment of Turkeys, Hens, Capons, and Fruits.

The next Town of Note we came to was *Xalappadela Vera Crux*, Consisting of about 2000 Inhabitants, *Spaniards* and *Indians*. This Town is a Bishop's See, standing in a Fruitful Soil, yielding store of *Indian* Wheat, called *Maize*, and some *Spanish* Wheat; it is encompassed with *Indian* Villages, Farms of Sugar, Cochinil, and Pastures, that breed a great many Mules, and other Cattel in the Town; there is a large Church and Chappel, both belonging to a Cloyster of *Franciscan* Friars, who live very loosely considering the Vows they make when they enter into that Order, living Riotously, and forgetting Chastity, many of them living more like Gentlemen of great Estates, than Men under the ridged severity of the Religious Order they profess.

The next place we Arrived at was *La Rinconda*, which is only a kind of a Carevan-fair, or Inn, yet here we found store of Provision, and particularly, pleasant Spring-water, which much refreshed us, considering the Heat we endured, for it being the beginning of *September*, the Weather was exceeding sultry in this Valley; the Countrey about it showed very Green and Pleasant, Consisting of a great number of Farms, producing Corn pasture, and Fruits; but Lodging here in the Night time, we were terribly pestered with the Gnats that stung us intolerably, so that when we rise we scarce knew each other, though at Sun-Rising they go away in swarms, and come not again till after Sun-Set; we passed some Villages that Day, and by Night reached a Town called *Segura*, Inhabited by *Spaniards* and *Indians*, to the number of 1000. *Hernando Cartez* Built this Town as a Frontier, on the first progress of his Conquests in *Mexico*, against the *Cullicacans* and *Tepeacus*, who were Confederates with the *Mexicans*, and much annoy'd the *Spaniards* in the beginning of their Enterprize, taking 12 of them, Sacrificing them to their Idol, and then made a merry Feast of their Flesh, for which *Cortez* assisted by the *Claxcullan*

Indians

ndians took *Tepeacus* by force, and brought them with all their Territories under subjection to *Spain*, Condemning them to perpetual Slavery, in Revenge for the Murther of his *Spaniards*, and overcame likewise the *Cullucacans*, destroying their Idols, and forcing the chiefest of them to attend him as his Servants or Slaves; here we found store of Plantains, Sappotes, and Chicosapotes, which are Fruits of a pleasant taste, very juicy and sweet, also fair Clusters of Grapes, so that here, and in many other parts of the Countrey, if Vineyards were allowed to be Planted, they would produce as good Wine, if not better, than that of *Spain*, but the *Spainish* Kings have prohibited it, least it should hinder the Trade between the two Countries; for indeed except Wine, *Spain* affords them little but what they have among them, or might reasonably be contented without.

Out of the Road to *Mexico*, a little *Westward*, stands the famous Town of the *Tlaxcallans*, who making an Alliance with *Cortez*, were faithful Friends to him in his Wars, after they had tryed his strength, helping him to atchieve those Victories, which for a long time scarce could be credited in *Europe*; for they perceiving their numerous Forces, could not prevail against his handful of *Spaniards*, concluded them to be Gods, and consequently innumerable, because neither of their two Arrows they carried on their Standard took Effect, though shot in, wounding many of them, they having a Prophecy, that when they missed, the Victory would always go against them. Upon which, after many bloody Battles wherein they lost 40 or 50000 of their Men, they submitted, and became ever after constant friends to the *Spaniards*, and utter Enemies to *Monte Zuma*, then Emperor of *Mexico*, and his Successor; and by their assistance, *Cortez* took that great City, and many other places, for which this Town had greater Priviledges allowed it, than any other in *Judea*: This Province of *Tlaxcallan* had then 28 Towns and Villages depending on it, containing

150000 Families, which are now moſtly inhabited by *Spaniards*; the *Indians* in this part being kept under, and very poor, having little other wealth than the Corn, called *Centli*, though in the Town of *Tlaxcallan*, there are Artificers of both Nations, and the *Indians* out-do the *Spaniards* in making curious Earthen-ware, working in Gold, Silver, Feathers and other Manufactures. A little before one comes to this Town, there is the Ruins of their Ancient Wall that ſtood as a Boundard, and Strangers were forbidden to paſs it on pain of being Sacrificed in their Temples to the Idols, of which they had great Numbers, and for no other fault, *Cortez*'s Men underwent this Fate. *Tlaxcallan* is pleaſantly ſeated, there is ſtill a great Market kept in it, where ſometimes 5 or 10000 People aſſembled. It has ſeveral Churches and Chaples in it. and Cloiſters of *Tarians*, who grow rich out of the labour of the poor *Indians*, ſome being imployed to fetch them Wood, Water, and to Fiſh for them, being paid at the publick charge of the reſt. The two Streets of *Ocotelulco* and *Fixatian* are very fair, and the beſt inhabited of any other; the Town is not fortified, as indeed few in the *Spaniſh Indies* are, except the Seaports that are apt to be inſulted by the Buckaniers; the building is low, and very indifferent, it is a Seat of the chief Officers of Juſtice ſent from *Spain* every three Years, who is called the *Alcalde Major*, whoſe power extends to all the Towns within 20 Leagues circumference. The *Indians* likewiſe have among themſelves *Alcaldes Regidores*, and *Alguaziles* ſuperiour and inferiour Officers of Juſtice, appointed yearly by the *Alcalde Major*, who keep them in awe, fleecing them at their pleaſure, and exacting their ſervice without any ſatisfaction.

Keeping on one way, we came to a City called by the *Spaniards*, *la Puebla de les Angeles*, or the City of *Angels*: I viſited this City during my ſtay, and found it very Rich, being peſtered with Cloiſters and Monaſteries, which is a ſign of Wealth, for in poor Towns they rarely ſettle. It is ſeated in a low

and

and pleasant Valley, about 3 Leagues from a very steep Mountain, always covered with Snow, though the Heat in the Valley is very great; it was first Built and Inhabited in the Year 1530. being 20 Leagues from *Mexico*; it is a Bishop's Sea, and his Revenue is yearly about 20000 Duccats, the Inhabitants are accounted between 10 and 12000. They carry on a fine Cloth Manufacture there, which is sent over all the *Indies*, being as good as that of *Segovia* in *Spain*; there is a Glass-House and a Mint, wherein is Coined most of the Silver that comes from *Sacatecas*, to be sent to *Spain*; it has curious Gardens about it, repleniſhed with Fruits, Flowers, and Fountains, and the Fields that Encloſe them are very pleasant, abounding with Wheat and Sugar Farms.

Continuing our Journey after a considerable refreshment, we passed through many pleasant Villages, leaving considerable Towns on either hand to *Guaco Cingo*, Inhabited by *Spaniards* and *Indies*, to the number of 6 or 700. There is in it a Cloyster of *Franciscan* Friars. This place is like *Tlaxcallian*, has many Privileges granted by the King of *Spain*, because it Confederated with *Cortez*, against *Montezuma*. The Friars here Entertained us with Singing and Dancing, boasting that they had brought up several of the Town to do it, some of which they produced, and made them Dance to their Gittars with Castinets, and this we found to be the last Town of note, till we came to *Mexico*, which lies about 30 Miles from the way, up and down, over rising Hills and descending Valleys, with a mighty high Mountain before us, that overlooks *Mexico*, and the vast Lake it is Seated on. This Mountainous Alp has perpetual Snow upon it, and in passing the Spurs we found a great alteration in the Air, for here it was very Cold, to what we had felt before. In this Mountainous way the *Mexicans* endeavoured to stop *Cortez*, by laying mighty Ceders a-cross, but not staying to defend the Barocades,

rocades, with ſome pain he remov'd them, and Marched his Army of *Spaniards* and *Indians* to the Plains of *Quichatipec*, in the Juriſdiction of *Tezculo*, where he gave 100000 of *Montezuma's* Forces Battel, and Battering their Ranks firſt with his Field-Pieces, and then breaking in with his Horſe, utterly defeated them; whereupon, divers Towns upon the Lake, and on the Borders of the Mountain, ſubmitted to him; the Terror of him growing ſo great, that thoſe who ſubmitted not fled out of their City, which made him put out a Proclamation for their return, promiſing that no Injury ſhould be done unto them.

CHAP. XXIII.

My Arrival at Mexico; *a Deſcription of that famed City, what it has been, and what at preſent it is; the manner of Building; nature of its Inhabitants; Riches, and plenty of the Mountains, Lakes, and places about it,* &c.

After a tedious Journey, being Arrived at the great City of *Mexico*, the Head of the Northern *Spaniſh Indies*, I ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak more particularly of it, than of other places I paſſed through, as to what it now is, and in general as to what it has been, in its moſt flouriſhing ſplendor.

This City is large in Compaſs, and ſtands on two Lakes, which ſome have concluded to be but one, becauſe of their nearneſs and Communi-

cation

cation of their Waters, but they appear different in three things particularly; *viz.* one ebbs and flows by the force of the North-Wind, and the other does not; the Water of the one is Sweet, the other is Salt and Brackish; one has great store of Fish, and the other is destitute of any, though they have both their source or Springs that feed them from the great Mountain that overlooks the City. The Houses in this City are Built more stately, especially those of the Nobility and Gentry, than in other places; the Vice-Roy of the *Mexacanian* Province has his Palace here, and so has the Arch-Bishop. The Churches are many, Founded mostly on the Heathen Temples, which were in the flourishing state of the City, very numerous, and had Pyramides in the Midst of a vast height, on which the Idols stood, to whom they offered Humane Blood in Sacrifice, and sprinkled the Walls and Pillars of the Idol-Altar with it; there are in the City several Spacious Streets, and great Markets, affording all sorts of Provisions and other Necessaries. The Lakes by reason of the abundance of Boats and Canoes that Trade on them, furnish the City with store of plenty, especially with multitudes of Fowl and Fish taken there, the former being allured by a certain Oily tough Scum on the Water, which they eat as Food; besides there are many Trading Towns on the Banks where the Boats take in Loading, and constantly supply the City. The Monasteries and Nunneries are a graceful Ornament to the rest, their being almost of all the Orders. The Churches have Curious Spires, with Guilded Crosses on their Tops, and the whole Fabrick's Built with Stone of rare Architecture. Water comes almost into all parts of the City, by small Conduits, for though the Streets were formerly watered by Channels from the Lake, they are now mostly stopped up, and firm Ground made where Houses are Built; for after the Conquest, *Cortez* divided the Ground where the Houses had been Consumed by

by Fire, or void ſpaces, were ſome to the *Indians*, and ſome to the *Spaniards*, and free Leave was given by Proclamation, for every one to come in and Build, ſo that it was ſoon Rebuilt; but ſince the *Spaniards* have in a manner diſpoſſeſſed the *Indians* of their part; for though many Live in the City, yet are they obliged to hire the Houſes at dear Rates, that were formerly by Grant from the Court of *Spain*, their lawful Patrimonies, or Inheritance. The *Spaniards* Built their Houſes in their own Faſhion, and the *Indians* theirs according to the cuſtom of the Countrey. *Cortez* Built his where King *Montezumas*'s ſtately Palace ſtood, which in the Siege had been conſumed with Fire, and a vaſt number of Wild Beaſts of all ſorts that he kept there in Wooden Cages Burnt in it, lamentably roaring and howling as the Fire approached them; and this Houſe is the moſt ſtately in the City, being the Seat of the Vice-Roy of all the Province, and is called the Palace of the *Marqueſs d' Valla*, for that Title the King of *Spain* conferred on *Cortez*, after he had obtained his amazing Victories, over ſuch a mighty Nation, conſidering his Forces were but a handful of *Spaniards*; but that which ſeemed in all humane probability to give him ſucceſs were the Bullets, and Chain-Shot, proceeding from his Thundring Artillery, for the *Indians* unacquainted with ſuch Engines, took their roaring and breathing flame to be the Voice of the Angry Gods that fought againſt them, and when the Shot made Lanes among them, they took them for their Thunderbolts, or deſtroying Angels, ſent as Meſſengers of their vengeance, to cut them off, not thinking any thing in nature could be of ſo violent a force, as to beat down Ranks of Men before them with ſuch ſwiftneſs that the Eye could ſcarce trace the Deaths they gave. This, and the *Spaniards* Armour proof againſt their Arrows, made their Courage ſtoop and languiſh though otherways a Valiant people, as appears by their diſputing it in

the

the City from Street to Street, and fortifying themselves with intrenchments as they Retreated, tho' by the Sword, Pestilence, and Famine, 10000 or more, lay Dead within the Walls. In this War *Montezuma* was Slain by his own Subjects, against their Wills, for being taken Prisoner, when multitudes of *Indians* assaulted the Palace, where *Cortez* and his *Spaniards* were, he was constrained to go to a Ballcony, or Battlement, to desire his Subjects to desist, and come to a Parley, when one of the inraged multitude not knowing him in the hurry, struck him with a sharp Flint on the Temples, which wounded him so much that he fell down, and soon after Died; yet at that time *Cortez* was forced to retire out of the City, to strengthen himself in *Flaxcallan*, and at his second time took it, by the help of the Vergantines, or Vessels he Besieged it with, on the side of the Lake, which stopping up all passage for Relief, Famine, and its attendant Pestilence, proved their worst Enemy, yet submitted they not, but disputed it, as I have said, till *Quahutimo C*———their New King, seeing things brought to the last extreamity, endeavouring to fly by way of the Lake, was surprized by the *Spanish* Vessels, and made Prisoner, at that time by *Cortez*'s perswasion (who would not give him his Wish to kill him, tho' he desired it,) Commanded his Men to lay down their Arms, and then about 60000 came out of their strength and submitted, have Lived a long time on the Flesh of the Slain; yet Famine notwithstanding had so pinched them, that they looked like the shadows of Men, Lean, Meager, and very Gastly.

Over again the Palace, they Built Arched Docks, to lay up the *Vergantines*, in perpetual memory of the notable Service they had done; but they are mostly wasted by Time; and other Vessels Trading on the Lake are in the wet Season laid up there. However this Great City is sometimes unhealthful, for as much as there arises at certain

times

times a noysom Vapour from the Lake, and at those times the Winds blow little to purge the Air, because of the Inclosure of Mountains. The *Spaniards* a long time stood on their Guard, after the taking of *Mexico*, the Citizens keeping 2000 Horse and Arms, for Horse-Men, always to be in a readiness when the Trumpet should sound; but by what they have consumed of the *Indians* in their Mines, and in working on the Lake, in making great Intrenchments, other Works, and particularly, by their Cruelty, they have so far exhausted them, that those Forces are laid aside, and they live secure without fear of surprize; for the City lies open in most parts, and in all defenceless, except the strength of the Inhabitans being destitute of Bullwarks and other considerable Fortifications, tho' an exceeding Rich City, and the Lading of 20 or more Ships are brought yearly to it, by the way of the North Sea, containing the best and Richest Commodities of *Spain*, and other parts of *Christendom*, bought up by the *Spaniards* to this purpose, and from the South-Sea it Trafficks with *Perue*; it Trades also with several Eastern Nations, by way of the *Pilipinas*.

Money is daily Coined in the Mint to a great value, the Silver being brought on Mules from the Mines of St. *Lewis de Saccatecas*, about 80 Leagues more Northward, and beyond them the *Spaniards* by Conquest, and the voluntary submission of the Natives, have gained the possession of very large Countries. There is in this City a University, which was formerly only a School. The Officers here are as in the great Cities of *Spain*, and it is Computed to have in the City and Suburbs 50000 Houses, and to the latter, called *Guadalupe*, the *Indians* are mostly confined. The *Spaniards* Styling themselves absolute Conquerors and Disposers of their Persons and Fortunes, being very proud and insulting over them, a Conqueror among them being termed a Title of Honour, so that the most Beggarly among the *Spaniards*

niards will proudly boast to be descended from one of the first Conquerors, and Style himself a Don, though he has not one Foot of Land in Possession. There are many fair Gardens and Orchards about this City, with pleasant Summer-Fountains, and other things suitable for recreation in them.

The Buildings are with Stone and Brick, but not high, to prevent their being shaken, and overthrown by Earthquakes, that often happen in this Country. In the narrowest Streets 3 Coaches may go abrest, and in the broadest 6; They keep a vast number of Coaches here, some account them 15000. those of the Nobility and Gentry very stately, overlayed with Gold or Silver; and the Corners emboliſhed with Precious Stone, Ivory, or Mother-pearl, the Lining and Seats are Cloth of Gold, Silver, or *East-India* Silks. The Shops are every where stored with Rich Merchandize, and by this you may guess at their Riches and dexterity in Workmanship. A Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, *Anno* 1625. sent the then King of *Spain* the representation of a Poppinjay, a Bird bigger than a Phesant of *Meltal*, and Precious Stones, so artificially placed, as to represent us several Colours, and all parts very lively, and it was estimated at half a Million of Duccats. In the Church belonging to the Cloyster of *Dominican*, is a Silver Lamp, curiously wrought, with 300 Branches, beside 100 little Lamps for Oyl set in it, each of different Workmanship, valued at 400000 Duccats, and with such like curious Works are the Streets made Rich and Beautiful from the Shops of Goldsmiths. The *Spanish* Women are here very Beautiful, and take a far greater liberty than allowed in *Spain*, in Gaming, Drinking, and making Visits; nay, they will from their Windows, or Ballconies, invite Strangers as they pass the Streets, to play at Primera, and other Games, and such as accept the offer are plentifully Feasted with Wine, Sweet-meats,

and

and other Dainties, though this ſometimes prove fatal, for the *Spaniards* though ſo far removed, have not altogether forgot the imbred Jealouſie of their *Spaniſh* Anceſtors, who brought it out of *Spain* with them. Many of the *Spaniards* Marry with the *Indian* Women, and beget a race called *Mollotos*, of a Tawney Complection; nor ſpare they to take away the *Indian's* Wives, if they like them better than their own; they boaſt themſelves to the poor credulous Natives to be the Valianteſt and moſt Accompliſh'd Men in the World, and that all Nations Tremble at the Name of a *Spaniard*, and by this, and other Artifices, they keep them in great awe and ſubjection, aſſuring them, that no Nation under Heaven is able to deliver them out of their Hands, or in Battel to ſtand before them.

As for the *Spaniards* Attire, the Faſhion alters not here, but it is with the better ſort exceſſive Rich, and the meaneſt will go as Fine as poſſible, though other Neceſſities crave the ſparing of it. The beſt Silks, Damask, Cloath of Gold and Silver, Embroideries of Pearl and Precious Stones, are commonly worn amongſt them; nay, among Trades-people, a Blackamoor, or Tawney Young Maid, will make a hard ſhift to be in the Faſhion, with a Neck-Lace or Chain of Gold, Bracelets of Pearl, and Ear-bobs of large Pearl or Precious Stone; and though their Garments are very Rich, yet they overlay them with Gold, Silver-Lace, or Embroidery of Gold and Silver, and theſe ſort of Wenches are allowed or wincked at to be Curtizans or Common Women, to ſatisfie the *Spaniards* Venery, to which they are inſatiably given, and they have allways change of Apparel, eſpecially for Summer and Winter, though the Winter here conſiſts only in terrible Rains, and the overflowing of Lakes and Rivers, with inundations, occaſioning many times the Deſtruction of Houſes, People, and Cattel, and continues ſome Months. They are here very Superſtitious

ſtitious, both *Spaniards* and *Indians*, for at the invitation of the Prieſts they make exceſſive Offerings to the Shrines of Saints, as Crowns of Gold, Bracelets, Precious Stones, Veſſels of Silver and Gold, ſo that the Monaſteries and Churches may well be ſaid to enjoy the Profits and Pleaſures of a Golden World; for their Revenues, or yearly Incomes, are more than in any part of *Europe*; nor do theſe Eccleſiaſticks tie themſelves to the ſtrictneſs of the Rules of their Orders, but paſs away the time in divers Recreations. They have pleaſant Gardens, Fountains, Baths, Muſick, and plenty of Proviſion to Exceſs, ſo that this exuberiance or ſuper-abounding of this Country, has corrupted the Manners of the begging Friars, and rendred them as ſtately as petty Princes, particularly, their Superiors, who ſcarcely give place to any. Their Lodgings are ſtately, and the Roofs of their Cloyſters and Churches adorned with Moſaick Work and Guildings of Gold; ſome Altars are of Maſſive Gold, others of Silver, Pillars of Brazil, and Marble of little eſteem among them; and this Glorious ſhew of Pomp and Grandure draws the poor *Indians* to Admire and Adore them, though before their Heathen Temples were very Magnificent, but not comparable to theſe. They have Tabernacles of Gold and Silver, Chriſtial, and other precious things to enſhrine and carry the Hoſt about in Proceſſion; ſo that I may well ſay, the Riches of the greateſt King or Potentate I have yet ſpoken of, may in ſome degree of Magnificence fall ſhort of what I ſaw here, if I take the Clergy among the Laity.

In the Market-Place of this City, which is very Spacious, there are Arched Piazza's, and Shops furniſhed with Coſtly Wares, and before their Shops are all manner of curious Fruits Sold, that the Country affords; the Arches of the Vice-Roy's Palace, with the Walks of the Houſe, and the Garden, belonging to it, takes up almoſt one ſide of the Market; at the end of it is the princi-

pal

pal Prison, strongly Built of Stone, and next it the Beautiful Street called *La Paterìa*, or *the Goldsmiths-street*; where are to be seen the value of many Millions in Plate and Jewels. The Street of St. *Augustin* is very fair, where they Trade mostly in Silks. *Tabuca* is the longest and broadest, where mostly are Shops vending Iron-ware, Brass, and Steel, made into things fit for use and Service, and this is of very stately Building. In the Street *Del Aquilla*, the Houses of the Gentry are mostly seated. It is called so from an Eagle of Stone placed there, upon the Conquest of the City. There is a kind of a Park, or void place, shaded with Trees, where the Gallants and Ladies with their Trains and Equipages air themselves in the Evening, and here much mischief is done by quarels, upon the account of Jealousie in Courtship, and hundreds of Swords at a time have been drawn, to Revenge or rescue a Revenger, and carry him off to Sanctuary, where being once Lodged, he is out of the power of the Law; yet after all, the Lake at present much undermines the City, for that the Springs permit but of few Cellars; in laying in Dead Bodies the Coffins are half covered with Water, and many of the stately Buildings sink, so that they are forced often to repair their Foundations, by laying new ones on the old, that seem as it were to be swallowed up in a quick-sand.

This City has but 3 ways to come into it by Causey, the one is from the West, and that is a Mile and half long; another from the North, containing 3 Miles; on the East there is no entrance by Land, but on the South the Causey is 5 Miles in length, and by this last way *Cortez* entred when he made his Conquest of it.

About this City, as well as in other places, are divers kinds of delicate Fruits, as the Nuchili of divers Colours, a Fruit which eaten, stains like Black-Cherries, and colours the Urine as red as Blood, so that Strangers unacquainted with its quality,

quality, really fancy they void Blood; this put the *Spaniards* into great frights at their firſt coming, and their Phyſicians being ignorant of the Operation applied Remedies to ſtanch Blood, till the *Indians* gave them to underſtand better; the skin of them are thick, and full of ſmall prickles, which touching the Lips ſtick in them, and make them for a time ſtick together, ſo that the Voice will faulter, but this skin is eaſily pealed off, and then the Fruit appears of a Scarlet Red. There are alſo Apples, Pears, Quinces, Pomegranets, Musk-mellions, Cheſs-Nuts, Wall-Nuts, Figs, Lemons, Oranges, Citron, and abundance of other Fruits, known in *Europe*. But one Tree more Admirable than the reſt, not known amongſt us, the Metel, which they Plant and dreſs as they do their Vines. It hath near 40 kinds of Leaves growing on it, which ſerve for divers uſes; for, when very tender, they make Conſerves of them, when more grown, Paper, Flax, Mantles, Shoes, Mats, Girdles, and Cordage; on other Leaves grow Prickles ſo ſtrong, that placing them in Frames of Wood they make ſaws of them; from the Root there cometh a Juice like unto Syrrup, which by heat is made into Sugar; they make of it alſo Vinegar, and a ſort of Wine, that ſtupifies the *Indians* to Drunkenneſs. The Rhin'd roaſted heals Sores and Ulcers, applying Poltiſces to them; and from the uppermoſt Branches diſtills a Gum, which diſſolved in Wine, Antidotes Poyſon: And to conclude with this City, there is nothing in or about it wanting, to make it happy; but the Temper of the people, who are reſtleſs, in a Countrey flowing with all Delights Nature or Art can afford them in any degree.

CHAP. XXIV.

Travels into divers other parts of the Mexican *Province, describing the particulars that are Curious, and worthy of Note; As also in the* Peruanian *Province, as well Islands, as Continent; and all that is Rare and Remarkably found in* America.

HAving thus Travelled to *Mexico*, and described it as particularly as Prospect and Enquiry could inform me; I now undertake briefly to do the like of the Country of *Americas*, as far as it is yet known to the *Europeans*, or *Indians*, I conversed with those parts.

The chief Division therefore of this great part of the World is two fold, *viz.* the *Mexicanian*, and *Peruanian* Provinces. *Mexico* gives name to the greater half of *America*, and is called *Nova Hispania*, or *New Spain*, from whence the Kings of *Spain* Style themselves *Hispaniour Reges*. The *Mexican* Track containeth chiefly the Northern Parts, comprehending many large Provinces, or Countries, already known, and many not yet well discovered, as the parts that lie between it to the Northern or Frozen-Sea, *viz. Mexico*, *Quivira*, *Nicaragna*, *Jucatan*, *Florida virgina*, *Norumbega*, *Nova*, *Francia*, *Corteralis*, *Estoliland*, and some others, so that the Compass of this part already known is at least 23000 Miles.

The *Peruanan* part contains all the Southern Track, tied to the *Mexican* by the *Isthmus*, or streight

streight of *Darien*, being between 12 and 17 Miles over in some parts, from the Northern to the Southern Sea. This part contains the Provinces, or Kingdoms, of *Castella*, *Aurea*, *Gunia*, *Peru*, *Brasil*, *Chille*, in compass about 17000 Miles.

Mexico, as I observed, abounds with Gold sanded Rivers, producing many devouring Crocadils, tho' not so big as those in the *Nile* in *Ægypt*, which the poorer sort of the *Indians* take and feed on their Flesh, as a great dainty. There are several Mountains casting fourth Flames of Fire in it, as *Pepochampeche*, *Popocatapec*, and others, nay, all the *Southern* parts, as far as *Leon* in *Nicaragua* produces many of them, but the latter I have named, is one of the chief; it stands 8 Leagues from *Chollola*, it is a steep rockey Mountain. Ten *Spaniards* attended with *Indians* to carry their Water and Victuals, undertook to take a Survey of it, and approached so near the top, that they heard a terrible noise, occasioned by the Erruption of Fire; then the ground shaked so terribly, that they durst not approach no nearer, however, they perceived the Vulcan or Cavety whence the Fire Issued half a League in compass out, which Air and Fire proceeded, rebounding with a terrible Noise, Shrill and Whistling, so that the whole Hill trembled, and the top near this Mouth was covered with Ashes, about knee-deep, and as they were viewing it, such a shower of Fire fell, that had they not stept under the craggy over-hanging of a Rock, they had there been roasted to Death; but in an hour or two, it clearing up, they hasted down much affrighted, but without any harm: This Mountain before the coming of *Hernando Cartez*, had for ten Years dissisted sending forth Flames, and when it began again according to a prediction among them, the *Indians* looked for some great misery to befall them by change of Government. The Ashes blown in the Air, are many times scattered 10 Leagues from the foot of the Mountain.

This chief Province, called *Mexico*, is further divided into six Parts, *viz. Themistian*, *Nova-gallicia*, *Mechoacan* and *Gaustachan*; the first is the noblest and greatest, containing six Cities, of which the principal is the rich City of *Mexico*, the Seats of an Archbishop and *Spanish* Viceroy; the next is *la Richla de los Angeles*; the third *Vellazuca*; the fourth *Antiquera*; the fifth *Mexcioca*; the sixth *Ottopan*, besides these there are a great number of Villages, or large unwalled Towns on the Roads and Borders of Rivers and Lakes, inhabited by *Indians*, *Spaniards*, and *Mestizoes*, a mixed Generation of *Indians* and *Spaniards*.

Near *Mexico*, is *Tacuba*, a pleasant Town inclosed with Gardens; in the way to *Chapultepec*, is *Taluco*, a Town much traded to, and in the Woods breed Hogs, producing Bacon as good as our Westphalia. Travelling *Westward*, the Town of *la Piedad* presents it self at the end of a Causey, whether the People much resort from *Mexico*, to pay Adoration to the Image of the Virgin *Mary*, inriched with Crowns, Chains of Gold, and precious Stones, valued at a Million of Duccats. There is a pleasant Town bending to the *North*, called, *la Soledad*, or the *Solitary Wilderness*, where the Bare-footed *Carmelite* Friars have their Residence; but if this be a Wilderness, few places can be accounted pleasant, for it affords Fruits, Flowers, Shades Fountains, and every thing that can delight Mankind. And heither resort the Nobles and Gentry to take their Pleasure, who bring great Presents to the Friars, so that they live Fat and Plentiful on the outward appearance of Sanctity; for in their Oratory, and Cells made in Rocks, they hang Whips of Wyer, Girdles with sharp pricking Needles to wear next their Skin, shirts of Hair, and other mortifying Materials; but one of them ingeniously told me, they were placed there more for shew, than use, to move Peoples Charity towards them, and brought them a vast income of Money, and all sorts of Provisions; and indeed though they have out of a design given this

place

place the name of a Wilderneſs, it ſeemed to me an Earthly Paradiſe. At *Tadubaya*, not much diſtance from this place, is a very rich Cloiſter of *Franciſcans*, with curious Gardens and Orchards belonging to it; they have a ſtately Church there, and the *Indians* have been taught by the Prieſts to be Choriſters, and ſing very fine.

I have ſpoken ſomewhat already of the Province of *Guaſtachan*, which I paſſed in my Travels from St. *John de Ulhua*, to *Mexico*. It is a very plentiful Country, abounding in Sugar, farms Paſture, Corn, Cochinil, reaching as far as the Valley of *Guaxaca*, a very rich place, but having ſpoke of the moſt material Towns in my Paſſage, I ſhall paſs to the third Province, called *Mechoacan*, which is about 80 Leagues in circumference. This Province is very rich, abounding in Mulberry-trees, which feed a great number of Silk-worms; alſo in Wax, Honey, Black Amber, divers coloured Feathers, of which they make curious Works, and the River abound with ſtore of Fiſh. The chief City of this Province is *Valodolid*, a Biſhop's See; the Towns of Note are *Sinſonte*, which before the Conqueſt, was the Reſidence of the *Indian* King of the Province *Paſcuar* and *Coliman*, inhabited by *Spaniards* and *Indians*. There are alſo two good Havens, called St. *Anthony* and St. *James*, or *Santiago*; the King of it, called *Caconzin*, was a great Friend to *Cortez*, and much aſſiſted him in his Wars againſt the *Mexicons*, willingly yielding himſelf a Vaſſal to the King of *Spain*, though it was ill requited; for *don Nunio de Guzman*, firſt Ruler and Preſident of the Chancery of *Mexico*, after the Conqueſt picked a Quarrel, and made War on this Province, took the King Priſoner, who was quiet and peaceable, not ſtiring againſt him; and when he had ſtript him out of 10000 Marks in Plate, Gold, and other Riches, he inhumanly burnt him at a Stake, with divers of his Nobles and Gentry, who ſeemed to rejoyce that they were accounted worthy to ſuffer with their King, and in Death bear him Company into the other World.

Nova Galia, or the fourth Province of *Mexico*, is well watered with two large Rivers, *viz.* *Piaſtle* and *Sanſebaſtian*; it contains many great Towns of *Spaniards* and *Indians*; the chief is *Xaliſco*; the next *Guadalajara*; the third *Coaza*; the fourth *Corupoſtalla*; the fifth St. *Eſpirit*; the ſixth *Capala*, now called *Nova Mexico*, a Frontier on the *Northern Indians*, from whence the *Spaniards* frequently make Inroads and War upon them, and much incroach that way, to the great Waſt and Deſtruction of thoſe poor People, who would live in quiet, and do good Offices to the *Spaniards*, if they might be permitted; but their thirſt after the Mines of Gold and Silver, they ſuppoſe to be in that Country, and not yet diſcovered, is the main incitement that makes them puſh their Swords ſo violently that way, though they often meet with their Match; for theſe naked People are very Warlike, and in their flights after a Diſcharge of their Vollies of Poiſon Arrows, chamber up and run upon the Rocks like Wild Goats; their dwellings are for the moſt part in the Woods, where they make Swamps, and fortified places of Timber and other Materials, rudely piled and faſtned one to another, and that which incites the *Spaniards* ſo eagarly, to poſſeſs themſelves by Conqueſts of theſe *Northern* parts, beſides the Treaſure they find in them, is, out of Miſtruſt or Jealouſie, leaſt the *Engliſh* from *Virginia*, and other Collonies, ſhould be induſtrious in ſubduing and ſteping in before them.

Thus having briefly run over the chief *Mexicon* Provinces, under the *Spaniſh* Dominion, I now proceed to take a Survey of ſome others, and in the firſt place, of *Quivira*, ſeated in the moſt *Weſtern* part of *America*, over againſt *Tartary*, from whence not being much diſtant, many ſuppoſe that this new World was firſt inhabited from thence; for the *Indians* in their Manners, Likeneſs, and many Cuſtoms among them, much accord with the *Tartars*, they make their Cattle their chief Riches, feeding them in the Plains, Valleys and Mountains, the Country affording

affording every where ſtore of Paſture, and thoſe that look after the Cattle, carry Tents with them for ſhelter, and dreſs their Food in the Fields as the *Tartars*. This, and the *Southern* parts of *America*, appears to be far better Peopled than that towards *Europe*, ſo that though it is but a conjecture, yet it is a very probable one, that the firſt peopling this Country, was from *Aſia*, either accidentally by Ship-wrack, or driven out of their Country by Famine, War, or ſuch Calamities; they were conſtrained to ſeek new Habitations, and ſo after much wandering at Sea, found out this Country, though the *Indians* have a tradition, which is a received Opinion amongſt many of them, that their God with Blazing Fires, lighted and guided them Day and Night, over the *Northern* Rocks and Mountains, covered with Ice and Snow, feeding and cheriſhing them by the way with Pulſe and other Food, when they had been oppreſſed by Gyant-like Enemies, and driven out of their former Habitations. The Inhabitants of theſe parts take a greater pride in Glaſs Beads, and other Trifles, than in Gold and Jewels, and are eaſily impoſed on for the Exchange of the Hides of their Cattle; they make Coverings for their homely Cottages; of their Bones they make Bodkins and Needles; of their Hair, Thread; of their Sinue, Cordage; of their Blood, Drink; and of their Fleſh, Meat; of their Horns, Paunches, and Bladders, Veſſels: Some are of Opinion, that there is a Traffick on this Coaſt from *China*, or *Cathagina*, from whence *Vaſquez de Corovado* made a Progreſs into ſome parts of it, with his Army of *Spaniards*, which he ſaw from the Rocks, and high Mountains, on the Sea Coaſt, Ships at Sea, not of common Building, ſeeming to be well laden, and bearing in their Prows *Pillicans*, which could not be conjectured to come from any Country, but one of the two before named.

In *Quivira*, there are but two Provinces that are well known to the *Europeans*, and thoſe are *Cibola* and *Nova Albion Cibola Lys* on the *Eaſt*, where a

City gives that Name to the Province; the next to it is called *Tolentua*, a pleaſant place in a very temperate Air, Scituated on a River of that Name; the third Town that offers is *Tinguez*, inhabited by *Spaniards*, and in it, the Jeſuits have a ſtately College, and are appointed to Preach to the *Indians* in thoſe parts.

Nova Albion, lies on the *Weſt* ſide towards *Tartary*, this was diſcovered in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, by the Renowned *Engliſhman* Sir *Francis Drake*, who gave it this Name upon the King of the Countries Surrendering his Crown of Network and Feathers, curiouſly wrought, and ſubmitting himſelf and people to the Queen's Protection. It is in ſome parts inhabited by a few *Spaniards*, but not yielding any conſiderable ſtore of Riches, they have not much coveted to People it, though it abounds with Fruit pleaſant to the Eye and Taſt. The People are very Curteous and Affable to Strangers, but moſtly given to their old Idolatry, practiſing Charms; and ſome affirm they dance with the Devil on certain mid-night Feaſts, and revels, offering him human Sacrifice. The Bounds between this *Quivira* and *Mexico*, is *Marvir Miglio*, or *Californio*.

The next belonging to *Mexico* in the *Northern* Tract, is *Jucalan*, the firſt that Diſcovered it by *Franciſco Hernandez de Cordova*, Anno 1517. who asking an *Indian* the name of that Country, and he not underſtanding the *Spaniſh*, anſwer *Jucatan*, which in the *Indian* Language, is, *What do you ſay*, and from thence they named it, and ſo it has ever ſince been called. This Country is at leaſt 900 Miles in Circuit, and a kind of a Peninſula. It is fixed over againſt the Iſland of *Cuba*, and divided into three parts; *Jucatan* properly ſo called, which has in it the Cities of *Campeche*, *Valadolid*, *Merida*, *Semancus*, and one which for its Greatneſs and Beauty, they call *Caire* the chief; the Commodities here are Honey, Wax, Hides and Sugar, Cana, Fiſtula, Sarſaparila, *&c.* As for Food, it produces great ſtore

store of *Indian Maize*, and is well Watered and Wooded in all parts; the Timber is so good, that the *Spaniards* Build Tall-Ships there; they have store of Turkeys, and other Fowl, which with other Commodities, they pay as Tribute to the *Spaniards* for their Possessions, who keep them low and poor, which makes them apt to fall into Mutinies and Rebellions.

Another part of this Track is called, *Guatemala*, where the Cruelty of the *Spaniards* has destroyed near a Million of the Natives; yet this Country is populous, and has many flourishing *Indian* Towns in it. The chief Cities are *Guatemala*, *Cassuca* and *Chiapa*; it is well Watered with Rivers, and has some large Lakes full of Fish, and at Seasons, covered with wild Fowl; it abounds in Fruit, Corn and Cattle.

The third part of *Jucatan* is *Acasamil*, an Island over against *Guatemala*, which the *Spaniards* usually at this day call, *Sta Cruz*; it lies advantageous for a Harbour, and the advantage of Trade.

The fourth Division of the Northern Track under the Government of the *Spaniards*, is *Nicaragua*, standing South East from the City of *Mexico*, about 450 Leagues; yet it agrees with it in the Temperature of the Climate, the People are of good Stature, active and strong, and of Complexion indifferent White. Before they were brought under subjection, they had standing Laws, and many politicks in their Government, particularly, if one robbed an other, he was not put to Death, but became his slave till his service had made Satisfaction for the Damage done; they had no Law for the Murther of a King, as concluding none would be so wicked as to act such Villany. This Country gives a pleasant prospect, and abounds in all things necessary for human support; here grows the famous Tree so much Written of, which if a man touch but one of the Branches with his Finger, it presently whithers: There are great Flocks of Parrots, as of Crows or Pigeons in *England*; also Turkeys, Quailes, Rabbits

bits. The Spaniſh Cities here have a Biſhop's See, and *Granada* ſtanding on a Lake of freſh Water, about 300 miles in compaſs, which continually Ebbs, and Flows, though it has no intercourſe with the Ocean.

And thus much, having thought fit to ſpeak of the *Mexican* Provinces, and the Dominion of *Spain*, wherein I moſtly Travelled, I now come to ſpeak in their Order of the *Peruanian* parts, for richneſs in Gold and other Mettals.

This principally contains 5 large Countries, as I have already hinted. This Southern part of *India* is held to be Richer than the Northern, for although it wants the conveniency of Traffick by the Northern Sea, which the other has, and is therefore obliged to ſend its Commodities to *Pannama*, and from thence have them Tranſported over the Streight, or Iſthmus, by the River *Chiagree*, to *Portabel*, upon the North-Sea, yet the great ſtore of Gold, Silver, and other Mettal, make richly amends for their pains and Travel, and ſuch ſtore is found, that a Prohibition or Injunction is laid by the Court of *Spain*, not to open new Mines, till the old ones are ſufficiently wrought; the huge Mountains of *Potoſi* are thought to conſiſt moſtly of Gold-oar, and here grow all ſuch Fruits as are found in *Spain*, beſide many others natural to the Country; the Olives are larger than thoſe of *Spain*, the Oyl ſweeter and clearer, the Grapes yield Wine ſtronger than *Spaniſh* Wine, and here they have more Liberty than in *Mexico* to make it, becauſe it cannot be ſo well brought from *Spain*; they have ſtore of Wheat and other Grain, the Soil all lying under the high Mineral Mountains, being very Fruitful, the Water that deſcends fatning the Valleys, for there is but little Rain, and the Evening and Morning Dews give great refreſhment. The Vice-Roy has his Reſidence in the City of *Lima*, a place much ſubject to Earthquakes, and of late has been terribly ſhaken, and almoſt deſtroyed by 'em; there

is

is held a Court of Chancery, and it is an Arch-Bishop's See. It is well fortified since the *Buccaniers* have made so many Depradations and Pyracies on the Coast; two Miles from it is a convenient Harbour or Port, called *Callao*, where the Ships lie that convey the Treasure to *Panama*, and other Ships that Trade to divers parts, and beside *Castella Aura*, or *Golden Castel*. *Chille* is very Rich in Golden Mines, which has caused an obstinate War between the *Spaniards* and *Indians* that Inhabit it, who are very hardy, and dextrous at Fire-Arms, most part of them being the Sons of *Spanish* Women by *Indians*, so that a great many of the best Soldiers out of the *Neatherlands* and *Italy* have been sent thither under an Experienced Captain, who has the Command, as a Recompence for his Service in *Europe*. The *Spaniards* by their Wars have got strong footing, and are possessed of 3 principal Cities, beside many Towns of Note, as the *Conception*, which is a Bishop's See, *Santjago*, and *Valdivia*, this latter, took its Name from a Governor so called, whose thirst of Gold through Covetousness to grow Rich on a sudden, in using great Oppression, made the *Indians* of *Chille* break out into a Bloody War, and surprizing him in his House, poured melted Gold down his Throat, saying, *Since he had so eargerly coveted it, he should have his fill of it, and so much of it as should last him all his Life-time*; and accordingly it did, for the scalding Mettal presently killed him, but the War ended not with his Death, but has at times continued ever since.

As for *Guiana* and *Brasil*, the latter belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*, and States of *Holland*, by reason of their remoatness I had not an opportunity to Travel there, and since I can speak little of them, than what I have from Report, *viz.* that they are Rich, and Flourishing Provinces; I shall pass them over, and return again to *Castella Aure*, in the Southern or *Peruanian* Track. This containeth the North part of *Peru*, and

part

part of the Iſthmus, that runneth between the North and South-Sea, and beſide the Gold in it, it is plentifully ſtored with Silver, Pearl, Spices, Medicinal Herbs, and Drugs; it is divided into 4 Provinces, the firſt is called *Caſtella del oro*, the ſecond, *Nova Andaluzia*, the third, *Nova Granada*, the fourth, *Carthagena Caſtella del oro*; is Situate in the very Iſthmus, and not over peopled, by reaſon of the unhealthful Air, occaſioned by the noyſom Vapours ariſing from large ſtanding Lakes, or Pools; the chief places here belonging to the *Spaniards* are *Theomimay*, or *Nombre de Dias*, on the Eaſt; the ſecond, which lies 6 Leagues from *Nombre de Dios*, is *Portabel*, chiefly Inhabited by *Spaniards*, *Mulottos*, and *Blackamoors*; this latter, has a very fair and goodly Haven, from whence it ſeems to derive its Name, well fortified at the Entrance with 3 Caſtles, where the Guns reach and Command one another; in theſe places *Drake* braved the *Spaniards*, and did Exploits worthy the Fame of his Gountrey. *Nombre de Dios* (ſo called by *Didacus Niqueſa*, who after many croſſes at Sea, firſt Landed here, Founding this and *Portobel*,) is now in a manner forſaken, by reaſon of the little Commodiouſneſs or Security of the Harbour, lying open to the inſults of Pyrates, and more for the unhealthfulneſs of the Air coming off the Sea, and ſome Lakes near it, ſo that it was once removed, by an Order from the Court of *Spain*, in hopes that the Air might become more healthful in placing it ſome little diſtance from the Sea, but it little availed.

In this part of the *Indies* it was, that our Valiant, tho' Unfortunate Country-Man, *John Oxenham*, Arriving with about 60 Companions, drew aſhore his Ship, covered it with Boughs, and paſſing over Land cut down Timber in the Woods, of which, he made a Pinnace, and Navigating the South-Sea, took ſeveral *Spaniſh* Prizes, richly Laden with Gold and Silver, and ſafely recovered the main Land; but there by the Mutiny of his Company

Company, about ſharing the Booty, all miſcarried, for they gave the *Spaniards* time to ſet upon, and cut ſeveral of them off, among whom he fell, Courageouſly Fighting; and ſo the Riches, to the Value of a Million of Duccats, which might have plentifully ſatisfied them all, was loſt by their diviſion among themſelves.

Nova Andeluza, has for its principal City *Tocoio*, by the *Spaniards*, new Named St. *Margrets*, and an other little inferiour to it, called St. *Eſpiritu*, both Rich in Trade, and the Country throughout gives a good Proſpect of Plenty and Pleaſure. *Nova Granada*, is Situate on the South-ſide of *Carthagena*. It contains 6 principal Cities, *viz.* *Tungua*, ſuppoſed to be directly under the *Æquator*; *Tochamum Popaian*, a very Rich Trading City; *Sta fee*, or St. *Faiths*, an Arch-Biſhop's See, and a Court of Juſtice and Chancery, Governed by a Preſident, 6 Judges, the King's Attorney, and two High Juſtices of Court, who have allowed them out of the King's Treaſury 6000 Duccats a Year. *Palama* and *Merida*, and through this Country of *Granada*, lieth the Road way to *Lima*, all by Land. It is ſtrong, by reaſon of its Situation, much among ſtony Crags or Rocks, which environ it, and through which there are very narrow paſſages, yet is it full of pleaſant Valleys, which yield much Fruit, Corn, and *Indian* Maize; it affords Silver Mines, and many Golden Sand Rivers.

Carthagena, the laſt Province of *Caſtella Aurea*, is of a very Fruitful Soyl, but not without ſome evil quality; for it produces a Tree that graſped by the Hand proves a rank Poyſon, and the party hardly eſcapes without loſs of Life, or Member; the Chief City is *Carthagena*, Surprized and Plundered by *Drake*, *Anno* 1585. who, beſide a Rich Booty, carried from thence 230 pieces of Ordinance. It is now reaſonably well Fortified, tho' not ſo ſtrong as *Portobel*; the City is Fair and very Rich, by reaſon of the great quantity of Pearl brought thither from *Margarita*, and the King's Revenue,

Revenue, which for all *Nova Granada*, are ſent to this place; it is a Biſhop's See, and in it are many Stately Churches and Cloyſters, adorned with Riches; to this City likewiſe comes yearly ſmall Veſſels, Laden with Indico, Cochinele, and Sugar, made and had in the Country of *Guatemala*; the *Spaniards* thinking it ſafer to Ship their Goods in thoſe little Veſſels on the Lake of *Granada*, in *Nicaragua*, and from thence to ſend them hither, to be Shipped in the Galeons, that come from *Portobel*, with the Treaſure of *Peru*, than to ſend them by *Honduras*, in which way, they have become a Prey to other Nations. The City next in Rank, is *Abuida*; the next, *Sta Martha*, Inhabited by *Spaniards*, who are very Rich; it is Seated on the River *Abuida*, otherwiſe named St. *John*; and *Rio di Grand Venezuel*, and New *Cales*, in this Track, are Towns of conſiderable Note, Rich, and Populous; and theſe three Provinces, *viz.* *Andaluzia Nova*, *Nova Grana*, and *Carthagena*, the *Spaniards* term it their *Terafirma*; for that from the North, they are the ſtrength of *Peru*, and the baſis of this Reverſe *Pyramis*.

There are yet many Rich Iſlands under the *Spaniſh* Power, as that of *Margarita*, Situate in the Sea, near *Caſtella Aurea*, called the *Jewel-Iſland*, from the great quantity of Pearl and Precious Stones found about it. It is true, it is but poor in Fruit-Trees, Corn, and Herbage, having ſcarcely any upon it; the Water is likewiſe ſcarce, as is any thing good or pleaſant, ſo that the Inhabitants in the hot-ſeaſons will exchange a Tun of Wine for as much curious Cool Spring-Water; but the Jewels got there make large amends, by greatly enriching the People, ſo that there are many Rich Merchants, who have 30, 40, or 50, *Blackamoor* Slaves, kept purpoſely to dive for Pearls, and other Precious things. Theſe are let down in Baskets, and feel about the Rocks and places where they ſuſpect they are, and will ſtay under Water a Quarter of an Hour, and when their

their Breath begins to fail, they give the Sign, by pulling a Rope to thoſe on the ſurface in their Boats, to draw them up with ſuch things as they have rifled the Ocean of; and their Maſters are obliged to Feaſt and make much of them, leaſt out of a ſullen humour they ſhould under Water be careleſs of ſo weighty a buſineſs, where they cannot ſee them act, nor give them directions; for the *Spaniards*, though they love the Profit, are themſelves averſe to the fatigue and hazard in procuring it; for many times theſe poor Divers are drawn up with a Leg or an Arm off, and ſometimes taken quite away by ſome devouring Sea-Monſtrous Fiſh; at other times when they Dive without a Basket or Rope, they are ſucked by the Water under the hollow caveties of the Rock, whence they cannot with all their ſtrugling diſentangle themſelves, but there unavoidably periſh. From this Iſland, the Pearls are ſent to be dreſſed and bored at *Carthagena*; where is a Fair Street, of no other Shops than Pearl-dreſſers. Commonly in the Month of *June*, there is a Ship or two ready in this Iſland to carry the King's Revenue, and Merchant's Pearls thither; and one of their Cargoes is ſeldom valued at leſs than three or fourſcore Thouſand Duccats, which ſometimes falls into the Hands of Free-Booters.

Cuba, is an other Iſland, 300 Miles in length, and 70 broad, found out by *Columbus*, in his ſecond Navigation to theſe Coaſts; it is full of Woods, Lakes, Rivers and Mountains, the Air Temperate, the Soil very Fruitful. It produces Braſs of exact perfection, and ſome Gold, though not ſo fine as in other parts. It abounds with Ginger, Caſſia, Maſtick, Aloes, ſome Cinnamon, Canafiſtula, Sarſaparilla and Sugar, great ſtore of Fiſh, Fowls, and other Fleſh; ſo that the ſhips on their return to *Spain*, take in much Proviſion here. The chief Cities are St. *Jago* on the Northern Shoar, but *James de Valaſco* is a Biſhop's See. *Havana*, which is alſo ſeated on the Northern Shoar, and is a very commo-

commodious Haven for Shiping, ſo ſtrongly Fortified, that the *Spaniards* term it the Key of *America*, to lock up the Door or Entrance; here uſually Rideth the King of *Spain*'s Navy, and in this Port meet all the Merchants Ships from ſeveral Ports and Havens in Iſlands or Continent, and commonly in the Month of *September*, joyn all the Treaſure, as I may ſay, of *America*, all the King of *Spain*'s Revenues, with as much more of Merchants Goods, which is often worth 30 Millions: It has two ſtrong Caſtles, one at the point of the Haven, where the Enterance lies towards the Sea, and the other on the other ſide within, almoſt over againſt it, and by reaſon the paſſage of the Entrance is ſo narrow, that not above one great Ship at a time can ſail in; theſe Caſtles admirably defend it, or may well do it againſt a ſtrong Naval Force. I took a view of theſe Caſtles, and found them very ſtrong and regular; there are beſides others, 12 pieces of great Braſs Ordinance, called by the Names of the 12 Apoſtles, yet the Dutch, and other Nations, have ſometimes inſulted them in the Mouth of this Haven, and taken conſiderable Prizes within ſight and reach of the Caſtle Guns; and in the Year 1629. they took no leſs than 7 Millions, moſt of it the King of Spain's Treaſure going for *Cales*, and from one Friar, they took a Cabinet of Gold Chains, Pearl, and pretious Stones, worth 40000 Duccats, and forced the Galleons on ſhoar, in a River near the Port, which Miſcarriage being laid to the charge of *Don Juan de Guzman Y Torres*, the Admiral, at his return to *Spain*, he was Impriſoned, and ſoon after loſt his Head.

The next that preſented was another Iſland, much greater than any I have yet mentioned, now called *Hiſpaniola*, anciently by the Natives *Hatie*. It is in compaſs 1500 Miles, the Air very Temperate, Soil fertil, and has in it ſeveral rich Mines; there is a conſiderable Town from the Neighbouring Coaſts, for this Iſland produces Amber, Ginger, Sugar, Hides, Wax, and many other Commodities;

ties; the Gold is here very fine, and the Sugar-Canes larger than in other places, ſo that one of them will fill 20, and ſometimes 30 Meaſures. The Corn uſually yields a Hundred Fold, the whole Iſland being Fertilized by 4 great Rivers proceeding from a huge Mountain ſtanding in the Center, *viz. Juna* running to the Eaſt, *Artibinnacus* to the Weſt, *Jacchius* to the North, and *Naibus* to the South. The Woods are vaſt, and breed abundance of wild Swine, whoſe Fleſh is a great Dainty, yet the Country in many places is but thinly inhabited, becauſe the *Spaniards* on their firſt poſſeſſing it, deſtroyed about 3 Millions of the Natives.

The chief City is St. *Domingo*, where there is a Preſident and Court of Chancery, with ſix Judges, and other proper Officers. It is likewiſe the See of an Archbiſhop, who, though he poſſeſſes not ſo great a Revenue as the Archbiſhops of *Mexico* and *Lima*, yet his Honour exceeds them, for he is Primate of all the *Indies*: This Iſland having been conquered, and ſettled, it bares Precedency by Antiquity; there are other rich trading Cities and Towns, as St. *Thomas*, St. *Iſabella*, St. *John* Maragna and *Porto*, where the Merchants Trade much, and are very Wealthy.

America, is at this time ſo called from *Americus Veſpuſius*, who claimed the Honour of naming it, tho' *Columbus* firſt diſcovered it, as has been already hinted. There are in all the *Spaniſh Indies* (for other Nations poſſeſs large Territories, as well as they, where at preſent, my Travels lay not, and therefore I ſhall not undertake now to deſcribe them) four Archbiſhops, *viz.* of *Mexico*, *Lima*, St. *Domingo* and St. *Fee*, and about 30 Biſhops ſubordinate to them; the publick Adminiſtration of Juſtice is Principally committed to the two Vice-Roys of *Peru* and *Mexico*, the former reſiding at *Lima*, and the latter at the City of *Mexico*, and with

ſubordination to other Preſidents, Governours, and chief Juſtices, except the Preſident of *Guatemala*, and St. *Domingo*, who are accountable only to the Council of *Spain*.

CHAP. XXV.

The Nature, Superſtition, Manner, Cuſtoms, Labour, Diet and Obſervations of the Indians *in particular, and in General of the* Spaniards; *ſhewing the Tyranny of the Latter over the former, and many other things worthy of curious Remarks, with my Return for* England *by the way of* Spain, *and other matters.*

THus having taken a Survey, and diſcribed the greater Inhabited part of the new World (as many term it, which Nature had ſo long reſerved from our Knowledge, as her private Tireing-room, that being decked in all her Beauties, and Golden Ornaments, ſhe might at length appear more glorious than at firſt;) purſuing my Method, I now in the cloſe come to ſpeak more particularly of the Inhabitants, and chiefly of the Indians, for the Humour, Cuſtoms and Religion of the Spaniards, which vary little in this diſtant Region, are already ſufficiently known to Europeans.

The Indians are Vaſſals to the Spaniards, and for the moſt part little better than Slaves, to be at their Beck, and fulfill their imperious deſires with the

the labour of their Bodies, and the little Wealth they can scrape together, for though in the Towns alloted them, where they are in any Number, they are allowed Officers of their own, yet they dare act little without the concurrence of the Spanish Magistrates, even among their own Tribes; and to keep their courage low, they are deprived of offensive Weapons, and great Penalties laid on such, where, upon search, they shall be found. The Friars and other Ecclesiasticks, command their service for nothing, having a certain number allowed at the publick charge of other Indians to do their Drudgery, as fetching Water, Wood, Fishing for them, Tilling and Sowing their Ground, and the Seculars allow them but half a Ryal a day, though they compel them to leave their own Land untilled, leaving their Families to come many Miles to serve their turns; and to this, they are pressed to severe Penalties, being inflicting on the Refuser for a set number of days, as shall be required, and many times these poor Wretches leave their Wives and Children starving at Home in the mean time; and when they have done their Work, they are sent away with little or nothing, except sometimes Threats and Cudggeling, if they dare dispute it, or so much as murmur at what is said to them, or else turned over to an other that will give the Spaniard any allowance for their Labour, according to the first, or standing Agreement, though the work be never so hard, or above their strength; though indeed, they are mostly of very strong Bodies, and well proportioned in their Limbs, and would be far more industrious than they are, had they any tolerable Incouragement. But seeing their Lives and Estates are at the mercy of the Conquerors, few, considering their vast Number, strive to encrease Riches, but content themselves with a supply of ordinary Food and Rayment, going mostly Bare-footed in all Seasons, and any Passenger travelling the Road, may require an Officer to furnish him with an

Indian or *Moor*, to guide his Mules, and carry heavey Trunks; and after they cavel with them at the Journeys end, for ſome pretended neglect, and ſend them back with Blows inſtead of the promiſed Reward of their labour. If they refuſe to Work when ordered, or run away when Hired, they are ſought out by the Officers, and publickly Whipt in the Market-place; this, and more ſevere Uſuage, than I think fit to name, leaſt it ſhould not be credited amongſt compaſſionate Chriſtians, makes many of them weary of their Lives; ſo that coming Home from theſe Labours and Abuſes, they have refuſed to Eat, and voluntarily pined themſelves to Death, notwithſtanding the Tears and Perſwaſion, of their Wives and Friends, to incite them to a patient bareing of the Sufferings, and live.

As for their Religion, ſome in the remoter parts are ſtill Heathen Idolaters, paying Adorarion as covertly, as they can the imaginary God's of their Anceſters, and lay a great ſtreſs on their Protection, as Fire, Air, the Sun, Moon, and other things by ſeveral Names; for anciently they Worſhiped a great number of Gods, and had ſtately Temples Erected to them, ſacrificing Human Fleſh and Blood on their Altars, either of Priſoners taken in War with one another, or ſuch as voluntarily offered themſelves, or were choſen by Lot: The Names of their ſeveral Idols, and manner of their Antient Worſhip, not being proper to my Subject, but rather for a Hiſtory, I ſhall paſs them over; however at preſent, they have a kind of publick Eſteem, or a kind of Veneration for certain Beaſts, which they make exceeding much of, and cheriſh as their Gaurdians or Titulars, though they profeſs the Romiſh Religion, as the Prieſts have incerted it unto them; and one thing I took ſpecial Notice off, that they were more Admirers of the Pictures of thoſe Saints, that have Pictures of Beaſts painted by them, as St. *Mark*, with a Lyon, St *Luke*,

Luke, with a Bull, St. *Dominick*, with a Dog, and a flaming Torch in his Mouth, *&c.* then of thoſe that are without ſuch Emblems conſe ing that they like them the better, and comply with the Devotion payed to them, becauſe it agreed with the Worſhip of their Anceſtors. Thoſe that are able, are very careful to buy the Picture of one Saint or other, as their fancy leads them, and give the Prieſt Money to have a place for it in the Church; and by this a great deal of Money is ſcrewed out of them, for from that time the Prieſt ſtiles the Party, the Patron of that Saint, and he is obliged to bring Offerings, and leave before him, eſpecially on his Day, very conſiderable, which being left, the Prieſt ſweeps away, and Converts it to his own uſe, ſelling then the Wax Candles they offer many times over and over, which, with other things, brings a great Income. Where there is a number of theſe Saints in a Church, and often he ſtirs them up with Tauntings and Revilings, to mind it as a Duty, or to expect ſome great puniſhment from their angry Saint, if they ſlack in their Offerings, and many times he lays hold of Sickneſs in their Families, or Death of Cattle, telling them for want of their Offerings, and neglect of their Devotion and Charity, their ſlighted Saint is Angry, and has thus puniſhed them, which frights them into large Contributions; on which, the Prieſts lives Fat, and laughs in his Sleave at their Simplicity and Ignorance. Yet for all this, he himſelf ſo little fears the Saint, that he will throw his Picture out of the Church, if the party who owned him dies, and none of his Kindred, or others, come at a ſet time, after Proclamation made, with their Offering, to own and new Patronize him, declaring ſuch Saints as have none to offer to them, are uſeleſs and incumber the places in the Church, where others might ſtand who have Patrons that would bring Offerings; and the Picture being thrown out of the Church, is carried to the Town-Houſe,

Houſe, and then if the Friends of the Owner will have it again, they muſt pay the price that will be ſet upon it, which is uſually more than it coſt at firſt.

The Indians are very Ignorant in their Devotion, and undiſcerning in matters of Religion; for if they be asked any material point, their uſual anſwer is, *It may be ſo for ought they know*; and indeed, thoſe that ſhould be their Spiritual Guides, labour to keep them as Ignorant as they can, that they may the better work their Ends on them, though when they come to Church, they outwardly in Jeſtures appear very Devout, and are careful when at the point of Death, to have a Confeſſor, and receive the Extream Unction, tho' ſome of the heads of them that are ſomewhat more Learned than the reſt, are held ſecretly to practice Magyck, and traffick with the Devil; ſome affirm they can change their ſhapes into Beaſts and Birds, and in that ſhape, ſome of them have been ſhot, yet as ſoon as Dead, they were in their own ſhape again; though this, I believe, may be a tale of ſome *Spaniards*, who had Murthered them, and forged it upon them to excuſe their own Guilt. Yet this is certainly Recorded, that one *Gomez* and *Lopez*, Heads of *Indian* Tribes, and both in years, who had ſeemed very Devout in the Romiſh Religion, were juſtified by ſeveral Witneſſes, to be ſeen Fighting on a Mountain; the firſt, in the ſhape of a Lyon, and the latter, in that of a Tyger, and when the firſt came home, he was much Bruiſed, Bitten and Wounded, and of it ſoon died; and though he confeſſed nothing of it to the Prieſt, who Confeſſed him, and gave him the Extream Unction, yet the latter by the Spaniſh Juſtice, was ſeized and Tryed, and hang'd as a Magycian, or a Practiſer of Charms and Witchcraft. Its true, they had been a long time mortal Enemies, and the one might be guilty of the other's death;

death; but as for their transforming their ſhapes, that I leave to believed, or diſ-believed, at your pleaſure.

The Indians keep the Feſtivals of the Romiſh Church with great Mirth and Jolitry, Singing and Dancing; to conclude them after an Antick faſhion, they act the Show of the Wiſe Mens coming to Chriſt at his Nativity, with their Offerings, *&c.* in their Churches or Chappels, and have every thing prepared there ſuitable to that purpoſe, making great Mirth and Feaſting after it is over; and on ſuch days the Prieſts fairs well, for there are few that offer not Money, but Fowl, Bacon, Coco-Nuts, Wax, Tapers, and the richeſt amongſt them, are procured to preſent the Kings of the Eaſt, who fail not to provide Gold, Frankincenſe and Mirrh, and all this falls to the Prieſt's ſhare who manages the Show.

Their Funerals are after the Romiſh Faſhion, unleſs upon ſome Diſguſt they are refuſed Chriſtian Burial, but that may be recalled for Money; they Marry, and live very peaceably in their Families, the Women being very Obedient to their Husbands, owning them to be their Lords and Rulers, thinking nothing they can do too much for them; they are very Fruitful in Children, and moſt commonly Healthy, ſo that though ſuch multitudes of them have been purpoſely Deſtroyed, conſumed in the Mines, and put in Lakes and Rivers, yet the Spaniards, who are not by half ſo Fruitful, are but a handful in Number to them, though theſe few have ſo broken their Spirits, and kept them under, that now they are of no Courage comparable to what Hiſtorians Report of their Anceſters, who diſputed it in many well fought and Bloody Battles with the Spaniards, putting them hard to it before they could bring them under ſubjection, and ſettle what is now, by the Pope's Donation,

nation, the King of *Spain*'s claim in Sovereignty, as rightful Inheritance, tho' indeed their Orders are for kind uſage to the *Indians*, and that they ſhall not be made Slaves, but have in a due proportion an equal Foot with the *Spaniards*; but theſe things are not minded, and their Complaints when made to the *Spaniſh* Magiſtrates as little regarded, for they have rarely any redreſs; but if they put any Abuſe or Affront upon a *Spaniard*, they are ſeverely puniſhed, and compelled to make a three-fold reſtitution for any thing they defraud them of; beſide Corporal Puniſhment, there lies an Appeal of Puniſhment in ordinary Caſes, from their own Magiſtrates, to the Prieſt of the Town where they live, who determines the Sentence, whither after given by the Magiſtrates, the Criminal ſhall be Puniſhed, or Acquitted; and if he be Puniſhed, then the Prieſt has the ordering of it in the Church; and this the *Indians* ſeem to rejoyce at, ſaying, *their being Whipped by the Church Cenſure is for the good of their Souls, and cannot any ways redound to their Diſgrace*; and whilſt the Prieſt is in the Town, the *Indian* Magiſtrates dare not inflict Puniſhments, or lay Fines, without his Leave and Approbation, therefore ſometimes they contrive to do it in his Abſence; but this often diſpleaſes him, and makes him exert his Power, to cauſe thoſe Magiſtrates to be whipped in the Church, who dared to do it in Contempt of him; and ſo Abſolute are they over the Towns where they are placed as Curates, that the people dare not repine, but ſeem willingly to accept of what Stripes or Puniſhments are laid on them by him, fooliſhly conceiting that his Wiſdom, Sentence, and Puniſhing Hand, is the Wiſdom, Sentence and Hand of God, whom they have been Taught, is above all Princes, Judges, and Worldly Officers, and ſo that the Prieſts as his Miniſters, are above all ſecular Power and Worldly Authority.

As

As for their lying, it is only in Mantles wrapped about them, in their Houſes, on the bare Ground, or ſome Mat or Quilt under it; the better ſort have two Rooms on a Floar, without any other Story; the poor have but one; the Chimney is in the middle of the Kitchen, and a hole made for the Smoak to go out at the Top of the Houſe, ſo that the Soot ſpreads the Roof, and they live in a continued Smoak, whilſt their Fires laſt; their Meat they ſell to the *Spaniards* is courſe, ſaving their Fowl, as Shins of Beef, ſliced and dried in the Wind, then ſeaſoned with Salt and Water, and rowled up in little hard lumps, which boyled, ſerves them in their Travels; they make likewiſe Frixola's of Turkey-Beans and Maize, of which, they have great plenty, and induſtriouſly ſeek for Hedge-Hogs in the Seaſon, which they count a dainty Diſh, and the *Spaniards* alſo Eat them, they Taſting like a Sucking-Pig; but whether this Creature is Fleſh or not, or to be Eaten in Lent, there is yet a Diſpute among the Prieſts; ſome allow the Eating of them, others contradict them; ſo nice are they in frivolous ſcruples, when in weightier things their Conſciences are not touched. When the *Indians* get Veniſon in the Woods they Bury it, and cover it with Boughs, until it corrupts or ſtinks, then they parboyl it with a Herb like our Tanſey, then dry it in the Wind, and afterwards in Smoak, and ſo boyl it well; and indeed it Eats very ſhort, but according to their Dreſſing not over Savory; they have other ſorts of Proviſions, yet are but indifferent Cooks.

Their Liquor is chiefly Chochalet, made ordinary, with Coco-Nuts, and ſome other ingredients, but not Coſtly, with Spices and Perfumes, as the *Spaniards* make it; when they have a mind to be Drunk, they have another ſort of Li-

quor, made of Coccos Molasses, and the juyce of Tobacco-Roots, which they keep in a Jarr a long time, till it has a strong stinking Scent, and then they get a great many privately together in a House to Drink it; for it is Prohibited them, because when they are Drunk, they are Raving, and in a manner Distracted, committing Outrages on their own Family and others; and for that reason they are Prohibited Wine also, unless as a Cordial, when they are Sick or Faint; yet the *Spaniards* entice them to their Houses, and privately Sell it them at Dear Rates, for their own great Gain; for they know when they are Drunk they will Spend all they have to the Last Penny, if they can get Wine for it, not disputing the Score, how much soever they are Cheated; and when they are Drunk they Quarrel with them, their Money being first all Spent, and turn them into the Streets, so that the Stocks are cumbered with them, and on this particular account many *Spaniards* have got very great Estates.

This Country is often subject to the Plague of Locust, as well as violent Earthquakes, prodigeous Thunders and Lightnings, and in some places great innundations; yet by these Calamities the Priests gain much Money, by carrying the Saints in Procession, and Selling them Bread stamped with the Image of a Saint, to protect their Persons, Fields, and Houses, and much more Money for Masses, to the Saints, when the Calamities is over, by whose Intercession, they make the *Indians* believe, it ceased. Purgatory brings them a vast Income, few *Indians* Dying but leave so many Crowns, for so many Masses to be said for the good of their Souls.

Thus Reader having, as I think, given you a Satisfactory Account of this Golden Country and People,

People, tired with long Travel, I now prepare to return to my Native Country. You may remember I was got as far as *Havana*, and gave you also an Account of *Hispaniola*, &c. being then successfully Embarked with the Gallies, without meeting any opposition from Enemies, though we heard there were several abroad; we weathered two or three Storms, and lost but one Ship in the Gulf or Streights of *Bahama*, of 600 Tun, very Richly Laden; and having at length a prosperous Gale, came to *Cales* in 8 Weeks, from our last loosing Anchor. I had got something of Value in the *Indies*, which I Quilted up in my Cloaths and Bed, it lying in a small room; and after I had viewed the Town, (which is now Fairly Built, and well Fortified, though in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, the *English* made themselves Masters of it, and almost destroyed it,) I went to visit my Merchant, who received me with great kindness, asking many Questions of my Travels, which in brief I resolved him, and made him sensible how desirous I was to return to my own Country; and after so tedious a Travel of almost encompassing the Globe of the Earth, there to repose my self, and keep my Promise with my Friends, who I knew would be overjoyed to see me return; he did not oppose it, but kept me off with delays, in laying before me the danger I was in, of being taken by the *French*, or *Barbary* Corsaries, that infested the Seas, unless I staid for a Convoy; I was ruled by him, and he entertained me with all the Civility imaginably, and no sooner the *English* Ships were to Sail, and such an opportunity offered, but he gave me notice of it, presented me with Rasins, Sugar, Oranges, Lemons, and a Cask of good Canary; sent several Letters by me to his Correspondents in *London*, and so we friendly took leave of each other. I soon agreed for my Passage and Diet, at the Master's Table, and so to be brief,

came

came safe to *London*; where, my Friends after so long absence, my Speech being much altered in Toneing the Languages of divers Nations where I had been, scarce knew me, though before to their great satisfaction I had written to them, from the *Downs*, of my safe Arrival there; but when they saw by evident looking, it was their Prodigal returned in safety from strange Lands, after so much Toil, Fateigue, and Hardship, the Escaping so many dangers, &c. the Fatted Calf, was instantly Killed, great Feasting and Rejoycing ensued, which being moderated by time, and a little over, to avoid ten Thousand Questions, of where I had been, and the particulars of what I observed, at the Request of those that had done so well for me, and now so Lovingly received me, I took leisure time to Write what you have perused, hoping it will give my Country-Men as an entire satisfaction as I have had, in the undertaking and performing my Travels, and then no doubt but both of us will be well pleased.

FINIS.